

Language: English

Book: James

Introduction to James

Overview

James wrote to Christians who were scattered because King Herod persecuted them (see: Acts 12:1-5). James wrote this letter to be given to all the churches. James talks about problems likely going on in all the Christian churches.

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#)

Who wrote this letter?

Most scholars think James, Jesus' half brother, wrote this letter. Four men in the New Testament writings had the name James. Most scholars think that only two of these men had the ability to write this letter. That is, James who was the son of Zebedee and James who was the half brother of Jesus. King Herod killed James, the son of Zebedee. And Herod ruled from A. D. 37 until A. D. 44. Because scholars think that James wrote his book after A. D. 44, it is thought that only James the half-brother of Jesus had the ability to write the book. He wrote his book to give courage and strength to the Christians who King Herod persecuted.

Advice to translators: When two people are "half brothers," they have the same mother but not the same father. However, when two people have the same father, but not the same mother, they are still "have brothers."

To whom did James write his letter?

James wrote to the "twelve tribes in the dispersion." That is, to the twelve tribes scattered throughout the world. Some scholars think he wrote only to the Jewish Christians that were scattered in Gentile nations because of persecution. That is, he wrote to the literal twelve tribes of Israel. Other scholars think that James wrote to both Jewish and Gentile Christians because both were scattered because the people persecuted them. That is, he wrote to both the people from the twelve tribes of Israel and the Gentiles who became part of a group called the "people of God."

See: [Tribes of Israel](#); [People of God](#)

Why did James write this letter?

One of the main things about which James wrote was about enduring difficulties, trial, and attack. James reminded the believers to use their speech wisely, for encouraging other believers in their faith rather than speaking lies against them. James wanted the readers of this letter that genuine faith in Jesus is the kind of faith that shows itself to others, so one of his great encouragements was that they should be "doers of the word and not only hearers".

Why did James write his letter?

James first tells Christians to endure their suffering and the persecution that has caused them to leave their home. That is, he wanted to them to encourage and strengthen each other with their words and actions. When they spoke lies about each other, they only caused each other to be discouraged and they would not be at peace from one another and Jesus. James wanted Christians to know what was "true faith." That is, how believing in Jesus changed them and the way that they did things. He said they needed to be "doers of the word and not hearers only." That is, Jesus expects those who believe in him to do certain things and to honor God in the way that they live.

Outline of James

1. Endurance (1:1-27)
 1. Greeting (1:1)
 2. Trials (1:2-11)
 3. Tests of faith (1:12-18)
 4. Obeying the word of God (1:19-27)
 2. Faith and behavior (2:1-26)
 1. Faith and law (2:1-13)
 2. Faith and works (2:14-26)
 3. The test of the tongue (3:1-12)
 4. Earthly wisdom and heavenly wisdom (3:13-18)
 5. Submitted to God (4:1-17)
 1. Source of quarrels (4:1-7)
 2. Draw near to God (4:8-10)
 3. Speaking evil (4:11,12)
 6. Warnings to merchants and the rich (4:13-5:6)
 1. Warnings to the arrogant merchants (4:13-16)
 2. Warning to those who get rich by fraud (5:1-6)
 7. Patience (5:7-20)
 1. Examples of patience (5:7-12)
 2. Patience, endurance and effective prayer (5:13-18)
 3. Encouragement to rescue those wandering from the truth (5:19,20)
-

James

Chapter 1

¹ James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes in the dispersion: Greetings! ² Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you experience various troubles. ³ You know that the testing of your faith produces endurance. ⁴ Let endurance complete its work so that you may become fully developed and complete, not lacking anything. ⁵ But if any of you needs wisdom, let him ask for it from God, the one who gives generously and without rebuke to all who ask, and he will give it to him. ⁶ But let him ask in faith, doubting nothing. For anyone who doubts is like a wave in the sea that is driven by the wind and tossed around. ⁷ For that person must not think that he will receive anything from the Lord; ⁸ he is a double-minded man, unstable in all his ways. ⁹ Let the lowly brother boast of his high position, ¹⁰ but the rich man of his low position, because he will pass away as a wild flower in the grass. ¹¹ For the sun rises with burning heat and dries up the grass. The flower falls off, and its beauty perishes. In the same way, the rich man will fade away in the middle of his journey. ¹² Blessed is the man who endures testing. For after he has passed the test, he will receive the crown of life, which has been promised to those who love God. ¹³ Let no one say when he is tempted, "I am tempted by God," because God is not tempted by evil, nor does he himself tempt anyone. ¹⁴ But each person is tempted by his own desire, which drags him away and entices him. ¹⁵ Then after the desire conceives, it gives birth to sin, and after the sin is full grown, it gives birth to death. ¹⁶ Do not be deceived, my beloved brothers. ¹⁷ Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above. It comes down from the Father of lights. With him there is no changing or shadow because of turning. ¹⁸ God chose to give us birth by the word of truth, so that we would be a kind of firstfruits of all his creatures. ¹⁹ You know this, my beloved brothers: Let every man be quick to hear, slow to speak, and slow to anger. ²⁰ For the anger of man does not accomplish the righteousness of God. ²¹ Therefore take off all sinful filth and abundant amounts of evil. In humility receive the implanted word, which is able to save your souls. ²² Be doers of the word and not only hearers, deceiving yourselves. ²³ For if anyone is a hearer of the word but not a doer, he is like a man who examines his natural face in a mirror. ²⁴ He examines himself and then goes away and immediately forgets what he was like. ²⁵ But the person who looks carefully into the perfect law of freedom, and continues to do so, not just being a hearer who forgets, this man will be blessed in his actions. ²⁶ If anyone thinks he is religious and does not control his tongue, he deceives his heart and his religion is worthless. ²⁷ Religion that is pure and unspoiled before our God and Father is to help the fatherless and widows in their affliction, and to keep oneself unstained by the world.

James 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

James formally introduces this letter in verse 1. Writers often began letters in this way in the ancient Near East.

Special concepts in this chapter

Testing and temptation

These two words occur together in ([James 1:12-13](#)). Both words speak of a person who is able to choose between doing something good and doing something evil. The difference between them is important. God is testing the person and wants him to do what is good. Satan is tempting the person and wants him to do what is evil.

Crowns

The crown that a man who passes the test receives is a reward, something that people who do something especially good receive. (See: reward)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

James uses many metaphors in this chapter, and you will need to understand the material on the metaphor page before you can translate them well.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"To the twelve tribes in the dispersion"

It is not clear to whom James wrote this letter. He calls himself a servant of the Lord Jesus Christ, so he was probably writing to Christians. But he calls his readers "the twelve tribes in the dispersion," words which usually refer to Jews. It is possible that he is using the words as a metaphor for "all people whom God has chosen" or that he wrote the letter at a time when most Christians had grown up as Jews.

James 1 Commentary

1:1

How did people write letters in the first century?

[1:1]

In ancient times, it was common to begin a letter with the author's name, what other people called him, the names of those who were given the letter, and words of greeting. James used a common greeting in his letter and he wanted the people who he wrote to to have courage and be happy.

Why did James say he was a servant "of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ"?

[1:1]

James said that he was a servant "of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ." Perhaps he wanted people to know that Jesus is God. James was a Jew. Because of this, it would have been very wrong to call someone God or to say that there is more than one God. However, Jesus was God and there is only one God.

See: [Trinity](#)

Who were the twelve tribes?

[1:1]

The twelve tribes formed the nation of Israel (see: Genesis 49:1-28). Some scholars think that James was speaking to Christians who were also Jews. When James wrote, almost all Christians were from Jewish families. Other scholars think James used the metaphor "twelve tribes" to talk to all Christians, both

Jewish and Gentile (see: Isaiah 49:6). They think that Christians are now the Israel, that is, the people of God.

Advice to translators: “Twelve tribes” could mean the actual nation of Israel, or it could be a metaphor that represents all Christians. In the same way the twelve tribes of Israel were God’s chosen people, all Christians are God’s chosen people.

See: [People of God](#); [Tribes of Israel](#); [People of God](#)

1:2-8

What did James tell Christians to do during struggles?

[1:2, 1:3, 1:4]

Some scholars think James wanted Christians to know that God used “struggle”(πειρασμός/g3986) to make Christians stronger. James said that this struggle caused “endurance”(ὕπομονή/g5281). That is, it helped them to trust in God more. James wrote to Christians while they were suffering from persecution. This persecution caused Christians to leave Israel. James wanted to encourage these Christians. He told them that God used these struggles to help Christians do the same types of things that Jesus did. That is, they do the types of things that Jesus did.

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#)

Why do Christians need wisdom?

[1:5]

Christians need wisdom to know how God uses difficult times in their lives. He uses these difficult times to be Christians more like Jesus. That is, they do the types of things that Jesus did. James told Christians to ask God for this wisdom. He told them to ask “in faith(πίστις/g4102).” That is, when Christians ask God by praying, they need to completely trust God.

See: [Wise \(Wisdom, Fool\)](#)

What is a “double-minded” person?

[1:8]

James spoke about a “double-minded” person. Some scholars think James spoke about a person who said they trusted in God but did not trust him to answer their prayers. This person trusts in God sometimes but trust in the world at other times (see: Psalm 86:11; Romans 7:14-25).

See: Proverbs 11:3; Matthew 7:7-8; Romans 5:3-5

1:9-11

What does it mean to be a “poor” brother?

[1:9]

Some scholars think “poor”(ταπεινός/g5011) meant a poor person. Other scholars think it also meant a person without power or without honor in their community. James told the poor person to be happy in the “high position”(ὑψος/g5311) Jesus gave them (see: Luke 6:20; Ephesians 2:4-6).

How are rich Christians to be humble?

[1:10]

Paul wanted rich Christians to know that their riches cannot save them. That is, their money and possessions cannot keep them from dying and it cannot help them to have peace with God. Only by God giving the favor or showing them grace can a person live together with God forever in heaven. Because of this grace, James wanted these Christians to be happy and humbled because of what Jesus did for them.

Paul told the rich Christian that they will “fade away”(παρέρχομαι/g3928) in the same way that all other people do. All people die in the same way the flowers die (see: Isaiah 40:6-8).

See: [Humble \(Humility\)](#); [Humble \(Humility\)](#)

1:12

What is the “crown of life”?

[1:12]

God gives the “crown of life” to Christians who have difficult times, but still live in a way that honors Jesus (see: Romans 8:28-30). That is, they are honored in heaven. Perhaps James spoke about the time when all Christians are with God in heaven. At this time, God will give them the crown of life if they honor Jesus in the time of their struggles.

1:13-15

What causes people to sin?

[1:14]

James said that people’s own “desire”(ἐπιθυμία/g1939) tries to cause them to sin (see: Galatians 5:16-21; Ephesians 2:3). That is, people want to sin. If people do not fight against their desire to sin, they will sin. Sin causes death. In scripture, there are two types of death. Death is a type of separation. When someone's body dies, they are separated from their body. The second type of death separates a person from God forever. They go to a place called hell.

Some scholars think James spoke about those who are not Christians. Their sin causes them to be separated from God forever. This will happen when their body dies. Other scholars think James wanted to say that Christians sin because they do not fight their desires. If this happens, then God might punish them and their body may die.

See: [Hell](#)

1:16-18

Why did James tell Christians not to be deceived?

[1:16]

Some scholars think James wrote to Christians who thought that God tried to cause people to sin (see: 1:13). However, James told Christians that God was never caused them to sin or to desire to sin. They want to sin.

What did “Father of lights” mean?

[1:17]

James used the words “Father of lights” to say that God is the creator of all things. Also, he created the sun, moon, stars, and everything else in the sky (see: Genesis 1:14-19). John also said that God is light (see: 1 John 1:5). The shadows affect the lights of the sun, moon, and stars in the sky. However, the light of God never changes and no shadow can cover it.

See: [Light and Darkness \(Metaphor\)](#)

How are Christians born for a second time?

[1:18]

James told Christians that God gave them new “birth”(ἀποκυέω/g0616) (see: Titus 3:5). Christians have new birth because of the “word of truth.” That is, Christians are newly born when they hear and accept the gospel.

See: [Born Again \(New Life, Regeneration\)](#); [Born Again \(New Life, Regeneration\)](#)

Why did James call Christians “firstfruits”?

[1:18]

James used the metaphor of “firstfruits”(ἀπαρχή/g0536) to say that Christians belong to God (see: Exodus 22:29-30; 23:19; Leviticus 19:24).

They were also the first of something new God was doing through Jesus. Some scholars think James wanted Christians to know that they give themselves to God in the same way as they gave their best offerings to him in the Old Testament (see: Romans 12:1-2).

See: [Fruit \(Metaphor\)](#); [Offer \(Offering\)](#); [Fruit \(Metaphor\)](#)

What commands did James give Christians?

[1:19]

James gave Christians three commands.

He told Christians to be “quick”(ταχύς/g5036) to hear. Some scholars think James spoke about being quick to hear the word of truth (see: 1:18). That is, they were quick to trust in Jesus. James also spoke about being quick to hear the word “implanted” in them (see 1:21). Other scholars think James was thinking about one of the Proverbs (see: Proverbs 17:27-28).

James told Christians to be “slow”(βραδύς/g1021) to speak. This does not mean Christians speak in a way that is slow. James wanted Christians to think about every word they spoke so that their words honor Jesus (see: Proverbs 29:20).

Also, James told Christians to be “slow”(βραδύς/g1021) to anger. Many scholars think James told all Christians not to become angry quickly. Other scholars think James spoke to teachers and preachers. He wanted them to not be angry when other Christians did not know the scriptures in the same way church leaders knew it. However, James said that human anger does not honor God.

What does it mean to receive “with humility the implanted word”?

[1:21]

A person “humbly”(πραΰτης/g4240) receives the “implanted”(ἐμφυτός/g1721) word of God when they hear the Scriptures and honor God by obeying the scriptures instead of honoring themselves. This does not mean Christians only need to know many things about the scriptures. Instead,

James spoke about taking this word inside of themselves. That is, they take the scriptures and obey them so that they change how they live and think.

1:22-25

What is the “perfect law of freedom”?

[1:25]

When James wrote about the “perfect”(τέλειος/g5046) law, he wrote about the Law of Moses. Also, he wrote about the things Jesus taught. However, the things Jesus taught that had not yet been written down. What Jesus taught gave people much more knowledge about the things God wanted people to do. Also, James wrote his book with the help of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit helps Christians to understand God’s word completely. James also wrote that when Christians look carefully into the perfect law, it changes them. They obey God and God honors them.

James also said that this was the law of “liberty”(ἐλευθερία/g1657). Perhaps James said the perfect law was the law of liberty because this law makes Jesus known to all. Jesus saves people from the punishment of sin. After Jesus saves a person from sin, they can follow the law that honors God.

See: John 8:36; Romans 8:2; Galatians 3:21-25

See: [Law of Moses](#)

1:26-27

What is pure and unspoiled religion?

[1:27]

In scripture, sin is often spoken about as if something were getting or becoming dirty. When James spoke about something that was "pure and unspoiled," he wanted to say that it was not dirty. That is, it was not sinful or evil. In 1:27, James spoke about pure and unspoiled "religion" (θρησκεία/g2356) in three ways.

James said that a person who controlled their words was pure in their religion. That is, he did not speak about other people in an evil way.

He also said that a person who took care of the widows and orphans was pure and unspoiled in their religion. That is, they cared for widows and orphans in the same way God cares for all people (see: Deuteronomy 10:18; Psalm 68:5).

Also, James said a person who stayed away from the evil of the world was pure and unspoiled (see: Romans 12:2; 1 John 2:15-17). That is, they lived in a way that honors God.

See: [World](#)

James 1:1

General Information:

The apostle James writes this letter to all the Christians. Many of them were Jews, and they lived in many different places.

James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ

The phrase "this letter is from" is implied. Alternate translation: "This letter is from James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ"

to the twelve tribes

Possible meanings are 1) this is a synecdoche for Jewish Christians, or 2) this is a metaphor for all Christians. Alternate translation: "to God's faithful people"

in the dispersion

The term "dispersion" normally referred to the Jews who were scattered in other countries, away from their homeland, Israel. This abstract noun can be expressed with a phrase with the verb "scattered." Alternate translation: "who are scattered around the world" or "who live in other countries"

Greetings!

This is a basic greeting, such as "Hello!" or "Good day!"

James 1:2

Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you experience various troubles

"My fellow believers, think of all your different kinds of troubles as things to celebrate"

James 1:3

the testing of your faith produces endurance

The expressions "the testing," "your faith," and "endurance" are nouns that stand for actions. God does the testing, that is, he finds out how much the believers trust and obey him. Believers

James 1:4

Let endurance complete its work

Here endurance is spoken of as if it were a person at work. Alternate translation: "Learn to endure any hardship"

fully developed

able to trust in Christ and obey him in all circumstances

not lacking anything

This can be stated in the positive. Alternate translation: "having all that you need" or "being all that you need to be"

James 1:5

ask for it from God, the one who gives

"ask God for it. He is the one who gives"

gives generously and without rebuke to all

"gives generously and does not rebuke any"

he will give it to him

"God will give it to him" or "God will answer his prayer"

James 1:6

in faith, doubting nothing

"with complete certainty that God will answer"

For anyone who doubts is like a wave in the sea that is driven by the wind and tossed around

Anyone who doubts that God will help him is said to be like the water in the ocean or in a large lake, which keeps moving in different directions.

James 1:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

James 1:8

is a double-minded man, unstable

The word "double-minded" refers to a person's thoughts when he is unable to make a decision. Alternate translation: "cannot decide if he will follow Jesus or not and is unstable"

unstable in all his ways

Here this person is spoken of as if he cannot stay on one path but instead goes from one to another.

James 1:9

the lowly brother

"the believer who does not have much money" or "the believer whom other people consider unimportant"

boast of his high position

Someone whom God has honored is spoken of as if he were standing in a high place.

James 1:10

but the rich man of his low position

The words "let" and "boast" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "but let the rich man boast of his low position"

but the rich man

"but the man who has a lot of money"

of his low position

A rich believer should be happy if God causes him to suffer. Alternate translation: "should be happy that God has given him difficulties"

he will pass away as a wild flower in the grass

Rich people are spoken of as being similar to wild flowers, which are alive for only a short time.

James 1:11

its beauty perishes

A flower that is becoming less beautiful because it is decaying is spoken of as if its beauty were dying. Alternate translation: "it is no longer beautiful"

the rich man will fade away in the middle of his journey

Here the flower simile is probably continued. As flowers do not die suddenly but instead fade away over a short time, so also the rich people may not die suddenly but instead take a little time to disappear.

in the middle of his journey

A rich man's activities in daily life are spoken of as if they are a journey that he is making. This metaphor implies that he is giving no thought to his coming death, and that it will take him by surprise.

James 1:12

Connecting Statement:

James reminds the believers who have fled that God does not cause temptation; he tells them how to avoid temptation.

Blessed is the man who endures testing

"The man who endures testing is fortunate" or "The man who endures testing is well off"

endures testing

remains faithful to God during hardships

passed the test

he has been approved by God

receive the crown of life

Eternal life is spoken of as if it were a wreath of leaves placed on the head of a victorious athlete. Alternate translation: "receive eternal life as his reward"

has been promised to those who love God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has promised to those who love him"

James 1:13

when he is tempted

"when he desires to do something evil"

I am tempted by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is trying to make me do something evil"

God is not tempted by evil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "No one can make God desire to do evil"

nor does he himself tempt anyone

"and God himself does not try to persuade anyone to do evil"

James 1:14

each person is tempted by his own desire

A person's desire is spoken of as if it were someone else who was tempting him to sin.

which drags him away and entices him

Evil desire continues to be spoken of as if it were a person who could drag away someone else.

entices

attracts, persuades someone to do evil

James 1:15

Then after the desire conceives, it gives birth to sin, and after the sin is full grown, it gives birth to death

Desire continues to be spoken of as a person, this time clearly as a woman who becomes pregnant with a child. The child is identified as sin. Sin is a female baby that grows up, becomes pregnant, and gives birth to death. This chain of metaphors is a picture of someone who ends up dying both spiritually and physically because of his evil desires and his sin.

James 1:16

Do not be deceived

"Do not let anyone deceive you" or "Stop deceiving yourselves"

James 1:17

Every good gift and every perfect gift

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. James uses them to emphasize that anything good that a person has comes from God.

the Father of lights

God, the creator of all the lights in the sky

With him there is no changing or shadow because of turning

This expression pictures God as an unchanging light. This is in contrast to the sun, moon, and stars that appear to move in the sky and sometimes are darkened. Alternate translation: "God always stays the same. He does not change like shifting shadows"

James 1:18

to give us

The word "us" refers to James and his audience.

give us birth

God, who brought us eternal life, is spoken of as if he had given us birth.

the word of truth

Possible meanings are 1) "the message about the truth" or 2) "the true message."

so that we would be a kind of firstfruits

James is using the traditional Hebrew idea of firstfruits as a way to describe the value of the Christian believers to God. He implies that there will be many more believers in the future. Alternate translation: "so that we would be like an offering of firstfruits"

James 1:19

You know this

Possible meanings are 1) "Know this" is a command to pay attention to what I am about to write or 2) "You know this" is a statement saying that I am about to remind you of something that you already know.

Let every man be quick to hear, slow to speak

These sayings are idioms that mean people should first listen intently, and then consider carefully what they say. Here "slow to speak" does not mean speaking slowly.

slow to anger

"not get angry quickly"

James 1:20

the anger of man does not accomplish the righteousness of God

When a person is always angry, he cannot do God's work, which is righteous.

James 1:21

take off all sinful filth and abundant amounts of evil

Sin and evil are spoken of here as if they were clothing that could be taken off. Alternate translation: "stop doing all filthy sins and stop doing abundant amounts of evil"

take off all sinful filth and abundant amounts of evil

Here the expressions "sinful filth" and "evil" share similar meanings. James uses them to emphasize how bad sin is. Alternate translation: "stop doing every kind of sinful behavior"

sinful filth

Here "filth," that is, dirt, stands for sin and evil.

In humility

"Without pride" or "Without arrogance"

receive the implanted word

The expression "implant" means to place one thing inside of another. Here God's word is spoken of as if it were a plant made to grow inside believers. Alternate translation: "obey the message God has spoken to you"

save your souls

What a person is saved from can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "save you from God's judgment"

your souls

Here the word "souls" refers to persons. Alternate translation: "yourselves"

James 1:22

Be doers of the word

"Be people who follow God's instructions"

deceiving yourselves

"fooling yourselves"

James 1:23

For if anyone is a hearer of the word but not a doer

In the phrase "but not a doer" the words "is" and "of the word" are understood from the previous phrase. The noun "doer" can also be expressed with the verbs "do" or "obey." Alternate translation: "For if anyone listens to God's word in the scriptures but does not obey the word"

the word

"the message"

he is like a man who examines his natural face in a mirror

A person who hears God's word is like someone who looks in the mirror.

his natural face

The word "natural" clarifies that James is using the ordinary meaning of the word "face." Alternate translation: "his face"

James 1:24

then goes away and immediately forgets what he was like

It is implied that though he may see that he needs to do something, such as wash his face or fix his hair, he walks away and forgets to do it. This what a person who does not obey God's word is like. Alternate translation: "then goes away and immediately forgets to do what he saw he needed to do"

James 1:25

the person who looks carefully into the perfect law

This expression continues the image of the law as a mirror.

the perfect law of freedom

The relationship between the law and freedom can be expressed clearly. Here "freedom" probably refers to freedom from sin. Alternate translation: "the perfect law that gives freedom" or "the perfect law that makes those who follow it free"

this man will be blessed in his actions

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless this man as he obeys the law"

James 1:26

thinks he is religious

"thinks he worships God correctly"

his tongue

Controlling one's tongue stands for controlling one's speech. Alternate translation: "what he says"

deceives

gets someone to believe something that is not true

his heart

Here "heart" refers to his belief or thoughts. Alternate translation: "himself"

his religion is worthless

"he worships God uselessly"

James 1:27

pure and unspoiled before our God and Father

James speaks of religion, the way one worships God, as if it could be physically pure and unspoiled. These are traditional ways for Jews to say that something is acceptable to God. Alternate translation: "completely acceptable to our God and Father"

the fatherless

"the orphans"

in their affliction

The fatherless and widows are suffering because their fathers or husbands have died.

to keep oneself unstained by the world

Sin in the world is spoken of as something dirty that can stain a person. Alternate translation: "to not allow the evil in the world to cause oneself to sin"

ULB Translation Questions

James 1:1

To whom did James write this letter?

James wrote this letter to the twelve tribes that were scattered.

James 1:2

When experiencing troubles, what attitude does James say his readers should have?

James says to consider it all joy when experiencing troubles.

James 1:3

What does the testing of our faith produce?

The testing of our faith produces endurance.

James 1:5

For what should we ask from God if we need it?

We should ask God for wisdom if we need it.

James 1:6

What should someone who asks with doubting expect to receive?

Someone who asks with doubting should not expect to receive anything from the Lord.

James 1:7

What should someone who asks with doubting expect to receive?

Someone who asks with doubting should not expect to receive anything from the Lord.

James 1:8

What should someone who asks with doubting expect to receive?

Someone who asks with doubting should not expect to receive anything from the Lord.

James 1:10

Why should a rich brother be humble?

A rich brother should be humble because he will pass away just like the flowers.

James 1:11

Why should a rich brother be humble?

A rich brother should be humble because he will pass away just like the flowers.

James 1:12

Those who pass the test of faith will receive what?

Those who pass the test of faith will receive the crown of life.

James 1:14

What causes a person to be tempted by evil?

A person's own evil desires cause him to be tempted by evil.

James 1:15

What is the result of full grown sin?

The result of full grown sin is death.

James 1:17

What comes down from the Father of lights?

Every good gift and every perfect gift comes down from the Father of lights.

James 1:18

By what means did God choose to give us life?

God chose to give us life by the word of truth.

James 1:19

What does James tell us to do about our hearing, speaking, and emotions?

James tells us to be swift to hear, slow to speak, and slow to anger.

James 1:22

How does James say that we can deceive ourselves?

James says that we can deceive ourselves by hearing the word and not doing it.

James 1:26

What must be controlled in order for us to be truly religious?

The tongue must be controlled in order for us to be truly religious.

James 1:27

What is pure and undefiled religion before God?

Pure and undefiled religion before God is to visit the fatherless and widows, and to protect ourselves from the world's corruption.

Chapter 2

¹ My brothers, do not hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ, the Lord of glory, with partiality toward certain people. ² Suppose that someone enters your meeting wearing gold rings and splendid clothes, and there also enters a poor man in dirty clothes. ³ If you look at the person wearing fine clothes and say, "You sit here in a good place," but you say to the poor man, "You stand over there" or "Sit by my footstool," ⁴ are you not judging among yourselves? Have you not become judges with evil thoughts? ⁵ Listen, my beloved brothers, did not God choose the poor of the world to be rich in faith and to be heirs of the kingdom that he promised to those who love him? ⁶ But you have dishonored the poor! Is it not the rich who oppress you? Are they not the ones who drag you to court? ⁷ Do they not insult the good name by which you have been called? ⁸ If, however, you fulfill the royal law according to the scripture, "Love your neighbor as yourself," you do well. ⁹ But if you favor certain people, you are committing sin, and you are convicted by the law as transgressors. ¹⁰ For whoever obeys the whole law, except that he stumbles in just a single way, has become guilty of breaking the whole law. ¹¹ For the one who said, "Do not commit adultery," also said, "Do not murder." If you do not commit adultery, but if you do commit murder, you have become a transgressor of the law. ¹² So speak and act as those who will be judged by means of the law of freedom. ¹³ For judgment comes without mercy to those who have shown no mercy. Mercy triumphs over judgment.

¹⁴ What profit is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith, but he has no works? Can that faith save him? ¹⁵ Suppose that a brother or sister is badly clothed and lacks food for the day. ¹⁶ Suppose that one of you says to them, "Go in peace, stay warm and be filled." If you do not give them the things necessary for the body, what profit is that? ¹⁷ In the same way faith by itself, if it does not have works, is dead. ¹⁸ Yet someone may say, "You have faith, and I have works." Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works. ¹⁹ You believe that there is one God; you do well. But even the demons believe that, and they tremble. ²⁰ Do you want to know, foolish man, that faith without works is useless? ^{[1]21} Was not Abraham our father justified by works when he offered up Isaac his son on the altar? ²² You see that faith worked with his works, and that by works his faith was completed. ²³ The scripture was fulfilled that says, "Abraham believed God, and it was counted to him as righteousness," and he was called a friend of God. ²⁴ You see that it is by works that a man is justified, and not only by faith. ²⁵ In the same way also, was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works when she welcomed the messengers and sent them away by another road? ²⁶ For as the body apart from the spirit is dead, even so faith apart from works is dead.

Footnotes

2:20 ^[1]Some important and ancient Greek copies read,

James 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Favoritism

Some of James's readers treated rich and powerful people well and treated poor people badly. This is called favoritism, and James tells them that this is wrong. God wants his people to treat both rich people and poor people well.

Justification

Justification is what happens when God makes a person righteous. James says here that God makes righteous or justifies people who do good works along with having faith. (See: justice and righteous and faith)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Quotation marks

The words "Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works" are hard to understand. Some people think that they are what "someone may say," like the words in the quotation marks. Most versions translate them as words that James is saying back to that "someone."

"You have ... I have"

Some people think that the words "you" and "I" are metonyms for "some people" and "other people." If they are correct, verse 18 could be translated, "Someone may say, 'Some people have faith and other people have works. Not everyone has both.'" If the next sentence is also what "someone may say," it could be translated "Some people show their faith without works, and other people show their faith by their works. Both have faith." In both cases, the reader will understand only if you add the extra sentence. It is probably best to translate as the ULB does.

James 2

2:1

Who were the brothers?

[2:1]

James used the Greek word "brothers" to talk to all the Christians who read his letter. In the New Testament, Christians called one another brother and sister because they were God's children.

See: [Family of God](#)

Why are Christians not to have favoritism?

[2:1]

James told Christians not to have "favoritism" (προσωποληψία/g4382) for certain people. Jesus did not have favoritism for different people (see: Acts 15:7-9; Romans 10:12-13). If Jesus did not have favoritism, Christians are not to have favoritism.

See: [Family of God](#)

2:2-4

What does it mean to judge with evil thoughts?

[2:4]

James did not want people to "judge with evil thoughts." Many scholars think James wanted to say that judging others because they looked evil. That is, judging others because of what they wear and how they speak. The Bible says that only God can judge a person, and he judges by what is inside their hearts (see: Isaiah 16:7). That is, God judges them on their thoughts and why they do the things they want to do.

2:5-7

Who were the "poor"?

[2:5]

James spoke about the poor. Perhaps James spoke about people who did not have a lot of money or those who did not have a lot of education. Therefore, James said that God made poor people Christians and to teach the rich people how to have faith.

Why did James tell Christians to be "rich in faith?"

[2:5]

When James told Christians to be “rich in faith,” he wanted them to know that only faith in Jesus gave them life. That is, the riches the world gave them did not continue after they died. Jesus said that the riches Heaven gave only come by faith (see: Matthew 6:19-21).

Advice to translators: Someone who has “riches” has a lot of money.

Why did James say Christians were “heirs of the kingdom”?

[2:5]

A Christian is an “heir”(κληρονόμος/g2818) of the kingdom. Some scholars think they have God’s promise of being saved from their sins. James wanted Christians to know that when they die, they will be made perfect in heaven. Christians can know they are heirs because they have the Holy Spirit inside them. That is, he helps them to remember that God has saved them and helps them to live in a way that honors God. Other scholars think that certain Christians will have a place of honor when Jesus rules on the earth.

See: [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](#); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](#)

2:8

What was the “royal law?”

[2:8]

The “royal”(βασιλικός/g0937) law was greater than all other laws. The royal law had two parts:

1. Love God
2. Love your neighbor (see: Deuteronomy 6:4-5; Leviticus 19:17-18; Romans 3:8-10).

Jesus said this was the greatest law (see: Matthew 22:36-40). He said that all other laws of God were made up of this one.

2:9-13

Why is it sin to give someone favor?

[2:9]

Christians are not to favor some people over others because God does not favor anyone. Anything Christians do that God does not want them to do is sin (see: Deuteronomy 1:17; 10:17; 16:19).

What is the “law of liberty”?

[2:12]

James spoke about a “law of liberty.” Some scholars think the law of “liberty”(ἐλευθερία/g1657) was the gospel. Other scholars think the law of liberty was the word of God, that is, Scripture. At the time James wrote this letter, Christians only had the Old Testament. These books told that the Messiah was coming with a new law that would free people from God’s anger on sin.

See: [Gospel](#)

2:14-17

What did James say about faith and works?

[2:14, 2:17]

James wanted Christians to know that God did not want them to say they believed in Jesus but live in a way that dishonors God. Many scholars think James was talking about those who believed in God and knew a lot about God, but did not obey him. James wanted Christians to know that knowing about Jesus did not save them from sin. They needed to believe or trust in Jesus.

2:18-19**How do Christians show their faith?**

[2:18]

James said that others see the faith of Christians when they do what honors God. For James, faith and works were not to be separated. James said that demons believe in God and Jesus (see: Deuteronomy 6:4-5). But this did not save them from sin because they hated God and his promises.

2:20-25**How did others show their faith by their works?**

[2:21, 2:22, 2:23, 2:24, 2:25]

Abraham and Rahab trusted God. They showed people they trusted God by obeying him. Abraham left his home and family to obey God (see: Genesis 12:4). When God told him to sacrifice his son Isaac, Abraham obeyed (see: Genesis 22:9,12; Hebrews 11:17-19). Rahab showed people that she trusted God when she hid the Israelites to save their lives (see: Joshua 2:11-12).

2:26**Why did James compare the body and spirit with faith and works?**

[2:26]

In 2:26, James spoke about the things that people do as if they were dead. Some scholars think that John wanted to say that in the same way the body does not exist without the spirit, faith does not exist without works. That is, the body does not have life without the "spirit" (πνεῦμα/g4151), and faith does not have life without works. Other scholars think that James wanted people to know that believe

James 2:1**Connecting Statement:**

James continues to tell the scattered Jewish believers how to live by loving one another and reminds them not to favor rich people over poor people.

My brothers

James considers his audience to be Jewish believers. Alternate translation: "My fellow believers" or "My brothers and sisters in Christ"

do not hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ ... with partiality toward certain people

James wanted them to hold to faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, but he did not want them to show partiality to people. Alternate translation: "as you hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ ... do not show partiality toward certain people"

hold to faith in our Lord Jesus Christ

Believing in Jesus Christ is spoken of as if it were an object that one could hold onto.

our Lord Jesus Christ

The word "our" includes James and his fellow believers.

partiality

the act of treating some people better than others

James 2:2**Suppose that someone enters your meeting**

James starts to describe a situation where the believers might give more honor to a rich person than to a poor person.

wearing gold rings and splendid clothes

"dressed like a wealthy person"

James 2:3**sit here in a good place**

sit in this place of honor

stand over there

move to a place with less honor

Sit by my footstool

move to a humble place

James 2:4

are you not judging among yourselves? Have you not become judges with evil thoughts?

James is using rhetorical questions to teach and possibly scold his readers. Alternate translation: "you are making judgments among yourselves and becoming judges with evil thoughts."

James 2:5

Listen, my beloved brothers

James is exhorting his readers as if they were his family. Alternate translation: "Pay attention, my dear fellow believers"

did not God choose ... love him?

Here James uses a rhetorical question to teach his readers not to show favoritism. It can be made a statement. Alternate translation: "God has chosen ... love him"

the poor

This refers to poor people in general. Alternate translation: "poor people"

be rich in faith

Having much faith is spoken of as being wealthy or rich. The object of faith may have to be specified. Alternate translation: "have strong faith in Christ"

heirs

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member.

James 2:6

But you have

James is speaking to his whole audience.

have dishonored the poor

"you have shamed poor people"

Is it not the rich who oppress you?

Here James uses a rhetorical question to correct his readers. Alternate translation: "It is rich people who oppress you."

the rich

This refers to rich people in general. Alternate translation: "rich people"

who oppress you

"who treat you badly"

Are they not the ones ... to court?

Here James uses a rhetorical question to correct his readers. It can be made a statement. Alternate translation: "The rich people are the ones ... to court."

drag you to court

"forcibly take you to court to accuse you in front of judges"

James 2:7

Do they not insult ... have been called?

Here James uses a rhetorical question to correct and teach his readers. It can be made a statement. Alternate translation: "The rich people insult ... have been called."

the good name by which you have been called

Here "name" represents "Christ." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Christ, who called you" or "Christ, to whom you belong"

James 2:8

you fulfill

The word "you" refers to the Jewish believers.

fulfill the royal law

"obey God's law." The law is "royal" because God, the true king, is the one who gave it to people.

Love your neighbor as yourself

James is quoting from the book of Leviticus.

your neighbor

"all people" or "everyone"

you do well

"you are doing well" or "you are doing what is right"

James 2:9

if you favor

"give special treatment to" or "give honor to"

committing sin

"sinning." That is, breaking the law.

you are convicted by the law as transgressors

Here the law is spoken of as if it were a human judge. This can be translated using an active verb. Alternate translation: "the law itself convicts you of transgressing it" or "you are guilty of breaking God's law"

James 2:10

For whoever obeys

"For anyone who obeys"

except that he stumbles ... the whole law

Stumbling is falling down while one is trying to walk. Disobeying one point of the law is spoken of as if it were stumbling while walking.

in just a single way

because of disobedience to just one requirement of the law

James 2:11**For the one who said**

This refers to God, who gave the law to Moses.

Do not commit

To "commit" is to do an action.

If you ... but if you ... you have

Here "you" means "each one of you." Although James was writing to many Jewish believers, in this case, he used the singular form as if he was writing to each person individually.

James 2:12**So speak and act**

"So you must speak and obey." James commands the people to do this.

who will be judged by means of the law of freedom

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who know that God will judge them by means of the law of freedom"

by means of the law

This passage implies that it is God who will judge according to his law.

the law of freedom

"the law that gives true freedom"

James 2:13**Mercy triumphs over**

"Mercy is better than" or "Mercy defeats." Here mercy and justice are spoken of as if they were persons.

James 2:14**Connecting Statement:**

James encourages the scattered believers to show their faith before others, just as Abraham showed others his faith by his works.

What profit is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith, but he has no works?

James is using a rhetorical question to teach his audience. Alternate translation: "Fellow believers, if someone says he has faith but he has no works, that does him no good at all." or "Fellow believers, someone who has no works is no better if he says he has faith than someone who does not say he has faith."

he has faith, but he has no works ... that faith

Here, it is implied that "works" refers to things people do because they believe in God, such as

obeying God and doing good to others. The abstract nouns "faith" and "works" can be expressed with the verbs "believe" and "do." Alternate translation: "he believes in God but does not do anything ... what he believes" or "he believes in God but does not do anything as a result of his belief ... that belief"

Can that faith save him?

James is using a rhetorical question to teach his audience. This can be restated to remove the abstract noun "faith." Alternate translation: "That faith cannot save him." or "Just saying he believes in God will not save him."

save him

"spare him from God's judgment"

James 2:15**brother or sister**

a fellow believer in Christ, whether male or female

James 2:16**stay warm**

This means either "have enough clothes to wear" or "have a place to sleep."

be filled

The thing that fills them is food. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "be filled with food" or "have enough to eat"

for the body

to eat, to wear, and to live comfortably

what profit is that?

James uses a rhetorical question to teach his audience. Alternate translation: "how does that help them?" or "that does nothing good for them." or "your speech by itself does not help them."

James 2:17**faith by itself, if it does not have works, is dead**

Here, it is implied that "works" refers to things people do because they believe in God, such as obeying God and doing good to others. James speaks of faith as if it were alive if one does good works, and of faith as if it were dead if one does not do good deeds. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "faith" and "works." Alternate translation: "a person who says he believes in God but does not do anything, does not really believe in God" or "a person who says he believes in God but does not do anything as a result of his belief, does not really believe in God"

James 2:18

Yet someone may say, "You have faith, and I have works." Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works.

Possible meanings are 1) James describes how someone might argue against his teaching and how he would respond to that person or 2) James describes how someone might support his teaching. If the speaker is supporting James, then the quotation would end at the end of the verse.

"You have faith, and I have works." Show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works
The meanings in the abstract nouns "faith" and "works" can be expressed with "believe in God" and "do good things." Alternate translation: "You believe in God and I do good things.' Prove to me that you can believe in God without doing anything, and I will prove to you that I believe in God by what I do"

James 2:19**General Information:**

This page has intentionally been left blank.

James 2:20

Do you want to know, foolish man, that faith without works is useless?

James uses this question to introduce the next part of his teaching. Alternate translation: "Listen to me, foolish man, and I will show that faith without works is useless."

that faith without works is useless

The meanings in the abstract nouns "faith" and "works" can be expressed with "believe in God" and "do good things." Alternate translation: "that saying that you believe in God without doing good things is useless" or "that if you do not do good things, it is useless to say that you believe"

James 2:21**General Information:**

Since these are Jewish believers, they know the story of Abraham, about whom God had told them long ago in his word.

Was not Abraham our father justified by works ... on the altar?

This rhetorical question is used to rebut the foolish man's arguments from [James 2:18]

Was not Abraham our father justified by works ... on the altar?

This can be restated to remove the abstract noun "works." This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Did not God justify Abraham our father because of what he did ... on the altar?"

or "God certainly justified Abraham our father because of what he did ... on the altar."

father

Here "father" is used in the sense of "ancestor."

James 2:22**You see**

The word "see" is a metonym. Alternate translation: "You understand"

that faith worked with his works, and that by works his faith was completed

James speaks as if "faith" and "works" were things that can work together and help each other. The meanings in the abstract nouns "faith" and "works" can be expressed with "believe God" and "do what God commanded." Alternate translation: "that because Abraham believed God, he did what God commanded him to do. And Abraham doing what God commanded showed that he truly believed"

You see

James again addresses his audience directly by using the plural form of "you."

James 2:23

The scripture was fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This fulfilled the scripture"

it was counted to him as righteousness

"God regarded his faith as righteousness." Abraham's faith and righteousness were treated as if they were able to be counted as having value.

James 2:24

it is by works that a man is justified, and not only by faith

Here, it is implied that "works" refers to things people do because they believe in God, such as obeying God and doing good to others. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "faith" and "works." This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God justifies a man because of what he does, and not just because he believes in God" or "God justifies a man because of what he does as a result of his belief, and not just because he believes in God"

James 2:25

In the same way also ... justified by works

James says that what was true of Abraham was also true of Rahab. Both were justified by works.

was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works ... another road?

James is using this rhetorical question to instruct his audience. Alternate translation: "it was what

Rahab the prostitute did that justified her ... another road."

was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works ... another road?

This can be restated to remove the abstract noun "works." This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "did God not justify Rahab the prostitute because of what she did ... another road?" or "God justified Rahab the prostitute because of what she did ... another road."

Rahab the prostitute

James expects his audience to know the Old Testament story about the woman Rahab.

messengers

people who bring news from another place

sent them away by another road

"then helped them escape and leave the city"

James 2:26

For as the body apart from the spirit is dead, even so faith apart from works is dead

James is speaking of faith without works as if it were a dead body without the spirit. Here, it is implied that "works" refers to things people do because they believe in God, such as obeying God and doing good to others. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "faith" and "works." Alternate translation: "For just as the body is useless without the spirit, even so it is useless for a person to believe in God if he does not do anything" or "For just as the body is useless without the spirit, even so it is useless for a person to believe in God if he does not do anything as a result of his belief"

ULB Translation Questions

James 2:1

What does James tell the brothers not to do when someone enters the meeting?

James tells them not to favor certain people because of their appearance.

James 2:2

What does James tell the brothers not to do when someone enters the meeting?

James tells them not to favor certain people because of their appearance.

James 2:3

What does James tell the brothers not to do when someone enters the meeting?

James tells them not to favor certain people because of their appearance.

James 2:4

What does James tell the brothers not to do when someone enters the meeting?

James tells them not to favor certain people because of their appearance.

James 2:5

What does James say about God's choice of the poor?

James says that God chose the poor to be rich in faith and to inherit the kingdom.

James 2:6

What does James say the rich have been doing?

James says the rich have been oppressing the brothers and blaspheming God's name.

James 2:7

What does James say the rich have been doing?

James says the rich have been oppressing the brothers and blaspheming God's name.

James 2:8

What is the royal law of the scriptures?

The royal law is, "You shall love your neighbor as yourself".

James 2:10

Whoever breaks one point of God's law is guilty of what?

Whoever breaks one point of God's law is guilty of breaking all the law.

James 2:13

What comes to those who have not shown mercy?

Judgment without mercy comes to those who have not shown mercy.

James 2:14

What does James say about those who claim to have faith, but do not help those in need?

James says that those who claim to have faith, but do not help those in need have a faith that cannot save them.

James 2:15

What does James say about those who claim to have faith, but do not help those in need?

James says that those who claim to have faith, but do not help those in need have a faith that cannot save them.

James 2:16

What does James say about those who claim to have faith, but do not help those in need?

James says that those who claim to have faith, but do not help those in need have a faith that cannot save them.

James 2:17

What is faith by itself, if it has no works?

Faith by itself, if it has no works, is dead.

James 2:18

How does James say we must show our faith?

James says we must show our faith by our works.

James 2:19

What do those who claim to have faith and demons both believe?

Those who claim to have faith and demons both believe there is one God.

James 2:21

How did Abraham demonstrate his faith by his works?

Abraham demonstrated his faith by his works when he offered up Isaac upon the altar.

James 2:22

How did Abraham demonstrate his faith by his works?

Abraham demonstrated his faith by his works when he offered up Isaac upon the altar.

James 2:23

What scripture was fulfilled with Abraham's faith and works?

The scripture was fulfilled which says, "Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness".

James 2:25

How did Rahab demonstrate her faith by her works?

Rahab demonstrated her faith by her works when she welcomed the messengers and sent them away by another road.

James 2:26

What is a body apart from the spirit?

A body apart from the spirit is dead.

Chapter 3

¹ Not many of you should become teachers, my brothers, for you know that we who teach will be judged more strictly. ² For we all stumble in many ways. If anyone does not stumble in words, he is a perfect man, able to control even his whole body. ³ Now if we put bits into horses' mouths for them to obey us, we can also direct their whole bodies. ⁴ Notice also that ships, although they are so large and are driven by strong winds, are steered by a very small rudder to wherever the pilot desires. ⁵ In this way, the tongue is a small member, yet it boasts great things. Notice also how small a fire sets on fire a large forest. ⁶ The tongue is also a fire, a world of evil set among our members. The tongue defiles the whole body, sets on fire the course of life, and is itself set on fire by hell. ⁷ For every kind of wild animal, bird, reptile, and sea creature is being tamed and has been tamed by mankind. ⁸ But no human being can tame the tongue. It is a restless evil, full of deadly poison. ⁹ With it we praise the Lord and Father, and with it we curse men, who have been made in God's likeness. ¹⁰ Out of the same mouth come blessing and cursing. My brothers, these things should not happen. ¹¹ Does a spring pour out from its opening both sweet and bitter water? ¹² Does a fig tree, my brothers, make olives? Or a grapevine, figs? Neither can salty water produce sweet water.

¹³ Who is wise and understanding among you? Let that person show a good life by his works in the humility of wisdom. ¹⁴ But if you have bitter jealousy and ambition in your heart, do not boast and lie against the truth. ¹⁵ This is not the wisdom that comes down from above. Rather, it is earthly, unspiritual, demonic. ¹⁶ For where there are jealousy and ambition, there is confusion and every evil practice. ¹⁷ But the wisdom from above is first pure, then peace-loving, gentle, reasonable, full of mercy and good fruits, impartial and sincere. ¹⁸ The fruit of righteousness is sown in peace among those who make peace.

James 3 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

James teaches his readers that they should live to please God by reminding them of things that they know from everyday life.

James 3

3:1-12

How does God judge Christians who teach other Christians?

[3:1]

James said that leaders are judged more harshly or stricter than other Christians. This is because teachers lead and teach people what to know about God and how to follow Jesus' commands. Therefore, teachers must only say what is true about God (see: Ephesians 4:11-16). James warned teachers that if they said things that were not true about God, God punish them after they died. Scholars disagree about why they think James warned teachers.

1. There were people who did not believe in Jesus who were trying to teach other Christians about God. So James told these teachers that God will judge them for not believing in Jesus and for teaching untruths about God (see: Judges 14-15).
2. James wanted teachers who did believe in Jesus to remember how great was their responsibility as a teacher of God's truth (see: Hebrews 13:7). Perhaps they were responsible for the things that their students said about God. That is, they will be punished when their students say false things about God that the teacher taught to them.

Why did James say that all Christians stumble?

[3:2]

James wanted Christians to know that they never stopped sinning and that all Christians will “stumble” (πταίω/g4417)(see: Job 4:17-19; Proverbs 20:9; 1 John 1:8). James wrote that if a person does not stumble in what he said, he was “perfect”(τέλειος/g5046). Some scholars think James wanted to say that a person is perfect if they do not sin with the words they say. Because no person can stop saying wrong things, James said that no person was perfect. Other scholars think James spoke about a person who was a mature Christian. That is, they learned to control the words they say because they follow Jesus. This makes them “perfect” or more complete in their faith in Jesus.

Why did James compare the human tongue to bits and rudders?

[3:3, 3:4]

James wanted Christians to know that the words people speak control them in some way. He used two metaphors.

The first was about a horse with a bit in its mouth, which was a piece of metal attached to something a person used to lead them in a certain direction. In the same way a bit in the mouth of a horse leads the horse wherever the person wants it to go, so does the “tongue”(γλῶσσα/g1100) lead a person with the words that come from it.

The second metaphor is about the rudder of a boat; this is the part on the back of the boat that steers the boat. Also, in the same way a large boat is controlled by a small rudder, the human tongue is a small part of the body that can control the entire person’s life. James wanted Christians to know that the tongue was small, but the words it speaks can cause great destruction.

See: [Metaphor](#)

Why is the tongue a “restless evil”?

[3:8]

James spoke about the tongue as if it were a person, even though it is not a person. He said that no person can “tame”(δαμάζω/g1150) the tongue. That is, because the tongue is “restless”(ἀκατάστατος/g0182), a person cannot fully control it.

Also, James said the tongue was “evil”(κακός/g2556). That is, the words that it says can destroy people in the same way a poison destroys and kills people.

James wanted Christians to know that people cannot control their tongues, but God can control their tongues by the power of the Holy Spirit inside them.

3:13-16**How does a Christian show “meekness of wisdom”?**

[3:13]

When James spoke about the “meekness”(πραΰτης/g4240) of wisdom, he spoke about a person’s heart and mind. That is, those who were meek never got tired of doing what was good to others without thinking they were going to get anything in return. Some scholars said that a meek person has great power, but power they were able to control. They said that those who are meek are humble and gentle with other people. That is, a meek person does not give themselves a higher position over other people. That is, he does not try to control other people and he is not selfish.

See: [Wise \(Wisdom, Fool\)](#)

3:17-18**What is the fruit of righteousness?**

[3:18]

The “fruit of righteousness” James spoke about is a metaphor of how God works in all Christians. He helps Christians to do good things and do things that God wants them to do. However, it is more than just doing good things. They change and want to do things that honor God.

Those who have the “fruit of righteousness” are at peace with other people. These Christians are able to live at peace with others and create peace with other people in the world. By living in this way, Christians show other people what God is like. That is, who he is and what he does for the people he created.

See: [Fruit \(Metaphor\)](#); [Fruit \(Metaphor\)](#)

James 3:1**Not many of you**

James is making a generalized statement.

my brothers

"my fellow believers"

we who teach will be judged more strictly

"God will judge us who teach more severely." This probably because those whom they teach trust them to know the truth and teach it correctly.

we who teach

James includes himself and other teachers, but not the readers, so the word "we" is exclusive.

James 3:2**we all stumble**

James speaks of himself, other teachers, and the readers, so the word "we" is inclusive.

stumble

Sinning is spoken of as if it were stumbling while walking. Alternate translation: "fail" or "sin"

does not stumble in words

"does not sin by saying wrong things"

he is a perfect man

"he is spiritually mature"

control even his whole body

James is referring to one's heart, emotions, and actions. Alternate translation: "control all his behavior" or "control all his actions"

James 3:3**General Information:**

James is developing an argument that small things can control big things.

Now if we put bits into horses' mouths

James speaks about horses' bits. A bit is a small piece of metal that is placed into a horse's mouth to control where it goes.

Now if

"If" or "When"

horses

A horse is a large animal used to carry things or people.

James 3:4**Notice also that ships ... are steered by a very small rudder**

A ship is like a truck that floats on water. A rudder is a flat piece of wood or metal at the back of the ship, used to control where it goes. The word "rudder" could also be translated as "tool."

are driven by strong winds,

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "strong winds push them, they"

are steered by a very small rudder to wherever the pilot desires

"have a small tool that a person can use to control where the ship goes"

James 3:5**the tongue is a small member**

It can be stated explicitly what the tongue is a member of. Alternate translation: "the tongue is a small member of the body" or "the tongue is a small part of the body"

boasts great things

Here "things" is a general word for everything about which these people are proud.

Notice also

"Think about"

how small a fire sets on fire a large forest

In order to help people understand the harm that the tongue can cause, James speaks of the harm that a small flame can cause. Alternate translation: "how a small flame can start a fire that burns many trees"

James 3:6**The tongue is also a fire**

The tongue is a metonym for what people say. James calls it a fire because of the great damage it can do. Alternate translation: "The tongue is like a fire"

a world of evil set among our members

The enormous effects of sinful speaking are spoken of as if they were a world by themselves.

our members

"the members of our bodies" or "the parts of our bodies"

The tongue defiles the whole body

The tongue here is a metonym for the words of the person whose tongue it is, and the body is a synecdoche for the whole person. The words defiling the person is a metaphor for God rejecting a person who speaks evil words.

sets on fire the course of life

The phrase "course of life" refers to a person's entire life. Alternate translation: "it ruins a person's entire life"

life, and is itself set on fire by hell

The word "itself" refers to the tongue. Also, here "hell" refers to the powers of evil or to the devil. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "life because the devil uses it for evil"

James 3:7**For every kind of ... mankind**

The phrase "every kind" is a general statement referring to all or many kinds of wild animals. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People have learned to control many kinds of wild animals, birds, reptiles, and sea creatures"

reptile

This is an animal that crawls on the ground.

sea creature

an animal that lives in the sea

James 3:8**But no human being can tame the tongue**

James speaks of the tongue as if it were a wild animal. Here "tongue" represents a person's desire to speak evil thoughts.

It is a restless evil, full of deadly poison

James speaks of the harm that people can cause by what they say as if the tongue were an evil and poisonous creature that can kill people. Alternate translation: "It is like a restless and evil creature, full of deadly poison" or "It is like a restless and evil creature that can kill people with its venom"

James 3:9**With it we**

"We use the tongue to say words that"

we curse men

"we ask God to harm men"

who have been made in God's likeness

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God made in his likeness"

James 3:10**Out of the same mouth come blessing and cursing**

The nouns "blessing" and "cursing" can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "With the same mouth, a person blesses people and curses people"

My brothers

"Fellow Christians"

these things should not happen

"these things are wrong"

James 3:11**Connecting Statement:**

After James stresses that the words of believers should not both bless and curse, he gives examples from nature to teach his readers that people who honor God by worshiping him should also live in right ways.

Does a spring pour out from its opening both sweet and bitter water?

James uses a rhetorical question to remind believers about what happens in nature. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know that a spring does not pour out both sweet water and bitter water."

James 3:12**Does a fig tree, my brothers, make olives?**

James uses another rhetorical question to remind the believers about what happens in nature. Alternate translation: "Brothers, you know that a fig tree cannot grow olives."

my brothers

"my fellow believers"

Or a grapevine, figs?

The word "make" is understood from the previous phrase. James uses another rhetorical question to remind the believers about what happens in nature. Alternate translation: "Or does a grapevine make figs?" or "And a grapevine cannot grow figs."

James 3:13**Who is wise and understanding among you?**

James uses this question to teach his audience about proper behavior. The words "wise" and "understanding" are similar. Alternate translation: "I will tell you how a wise and understanding person is to act."

Let that person show a good life by his works in the humility of wisdom

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "humility" and "wisdom." Alternate translation: "That person should live a good life by doing the kind of deeds that come from being humble and wise"

James 3:14**if you have bitter jealousy and ambition in your heart**

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's emotions or thoughts. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "jealousy" and "ambition." Alternate translation: "if you are jealous and selfish" or "if you desire what other people have and you want to succeed even if it harms others"

do not boast and lie against the truth

The abstract noun "truth" can be stated as "true." Alternate translation: "do not boast that you are wise, because that is not true"

James 3:15**This is not the wisdom that comes down from above**

Here "This" refers to the "bitter jealousy and strife" described in the previous verses. The phrase "from above" is a metonym that represents "heaven" which represents God himself. Alternate translation: "This is not the kind of wisdom that God teaches us from heaven"

This is not the wisdom that comes down from above. Rather, it is earthly, unspiritual, demonic

The abstract noun "wisdom" can be stated as "wise." Alternate translation: "Whoever acts like this is not wise according to what God in heaven teaches us. Rather, this person is earthly, unspiritual, and demonic"

earthly

The word "earthly" refers to the values and behaviors of the people who do not honor God. Alternate translation: "not honoring to God"

unspiritual

"not from the Holy Spirit" or "not spiritual"

demonic

"from demons"

James 3:16**For where there are jealousy and ambition, there is confusion and every evil practice**

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "jealousy," "ambition," and "confusion." Alternate translation: "For when people are jealous and selfish, this causes them to act in disorderly and evil ways"

there is confusion

"there is disorder" or "there is chaos"

every evil practice

"every kind of sinful behavior" or "every kind of wicked deed"

James 3:17**But the wisdom from above is first pure**

Here "from above" is metonym that represents "heaven," which represents God himself. The abstract noun "wisdom" can be stated as "wise." Alternate translation: "But when a person is wise according to what God in heaven teaches, he acts in ways that are first pure"

is first pure

"is first holy"

full of mercy and good fruits

Here "good fruits" refer to kind things that people do for others as a result of having wisdom from God. Alternate translation: "full of mercy and good deeds"

and sincere

"and honest" or "and truthful"

James 3:18**The fruit of righteousness is sown in peace among those who make peace**

Making peace is spoken of as if they were sowing seeds, and righteousness is spoken of as if it were the fruit that grows up as a result of making peace. Alternate translation: "The result of making peace is righteousness" or "Those who work peacefully to help people live in peace produce righteousness"

make peace

The abstract noun "peace" can be expressed by using the word "peacefully." Alternate translation: "cause people to live peacefully" or "help people not to be angry with each other"

ULB Translation Questions

James 3:1

Why does James say that not many should become teachers?

Not many should become teachers because they will receive greater judgment.

James 3:2

Who stumbles, and in how many ways?

We all stumble in many ways.

What kind of person is able to control his whole body?

A person who does not stumble in his words is also able to control his whole body.

James 3:3

What two examples does James use to illustrate how a small thing can control a large thing?

James uses the examples of a horse's bit and the rudder of a ship.

James 3:4

What two examples does James use to illustrate how a small thing can control a large thing?

James uses the examples of a horse's bit and the rudder of a ship.

James 3:6

What is the sinful tongue able to do to the whole body?

The sinful tongue is able to defile the whole body.

James 3:8

What has no one among man been able to tame?

No one among man has been able to tame the tongue.

James 3:9

What two things come out of the same mouth?

Both blessing and cursing come out of the same mouth.

James 3:10

What two things come out of the same mouth?

Both blessing and cursing come out of the same mouth.

James 3:13

How does a person demonstrate wisdom and understanding?

A person demonstrates wisdom and understanding by his works done in humility.

James 3:15

What attitudes reflect a wisdom that is earthly, unspiritual, and demonic?

A person with bitter jealousy and selfish ambition has wisdom that is earthly, unspiritual, and demonic.

James 3:16

What attitudes reflect a wisdom that is earthly, unspiritual, and demonic?

A person with bitter jealousy and selfish ambition has wisdom that is earthly, unspiritual, and demonic.

James 3:17

What attitudes reflect a wisdom from above?

A person that is peace-loving, gentle, warm-hearted, full of mercy and good fruit, without favoritism, and sincere has wisdom from above.

Chapter 4

¹ Where do quarrels and disputes among you come from? Do they not come from your desires that fight among your members? ² You desire, and you do not have. You murder and covet, and you are not able to obtain. You fight and quarrel. You do not possess because you do not ask. ³ You ask and do not receive because you ask wrongly, in order that you may use it for your desires. ⁴ You adulteresses! Do you not know that friendship with the world is hostility against God? So whoever desires to be a friend of the world makes himself an enemy of God. ⁵ Or do you think the scripture says in vain, "The Spirit he caused to live in us is deeply envious"? ⁶ But God gives more grace, so the scripture says, "God opposes the proud, but gives grace to the humble."

⁷ So submit to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. ⁸ Come close to God, and he will come close to you. Cleanse your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded people. ⁹ Grieve, mourn, and cry! Let your laughter turn into mourning and your joy into gloom. ¹⁰ Humble yourselves before the Lord, and he will exalt you.

¹¹ Do not speak evil about another, brothers. The person who speaks evil about a brother or judges his brother speaks evil about the law and judges the law. If you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law, but a judge. ¹² Only one is the lawgiver and judge. He is the one who is able to save and to destroy. Who are you, you who judge your neighbor?

¹³ Now listen, you who say, "Today or tomorrow we will go into this city, spend a year there, trade, and make a profit." ¹⁴ Who knows what will happen tomorrow, and what is your life? For you are a mist that appears for a little while and then disappears. ¹⁵ Instead, you should say, "If the Lord wishes, we will live and do this or that." ¹⁶ But now you are boasting about your arrogant plans. All such boasting is evil. ¹⁷ So for anyone who knows to do good but does not do it, for him it is sin.

James 4 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Adultery

Writers in the Bible often speak of adultery as a metaphor for people who say they love God but do things that God hates. (See: and godly)

Law

James probably uses this word in [James 4:11](#) to refer to "the royal law" ([James 2:8](#)).

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

James asks many questions because he wants his readers to think about how they are living. He wants to correct and teach them.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Humble

This word probably usually refers to people who are not proud. James uses the word here to refer to people who are not proud and who also trust in Jesus and obey him.

James 4

4:1-3

Why do Christians quarrel and fight?

[4:1]

James wrote that Christians “quarrel”(πόλεμος/g4171) and “fight”(μάχη/g3163) with one another because they want their own “desires”(ἡδονή/g2237). That is, they want to do what they want to do instead of being at peace with one another. Also, James said this made Christians “jealous”(ζήλος/g2205) and have “selfish ambition”(ἐριθεία/g2052) (see: 3:16). When Christians are selfish and jealous, this causes them to harm one another.

James wrote about two kinds of fighting.

Fights that happen in the mind. A Christian’s selfish ambition fights against the Holy Spirit who lives inside of them. That is, the Holy Spirit reminds the Christian of what God wants them to do so that they will fight their own desire to sin (see: Romans 7:21-23).

Christians fight against Christians. Jealousy causes Christians to want what other Christians have. This causes them to fight with one another to get what they want.

How do Christians ask God for things in the wrong way?

[4:3]

When a Christian asks “wrong”(κακῶς/g2560), they ask for selfish reasons. That is, they ask for things they want, not things that God wants. Some scholars think James spoke about those who were not Christians. Non-Christians ask only for things they want God to give them to make them happy. Other scholars think James spoke to Christians who asked only for what made them happy instead of asking what God wanted from them. James spoke earlier about people who did not ask with faith (see: 1:6-8).

4:4

Why did James call people “adulteresses”?

[4:4]

James called the people “adulteresses.” This is because they called themselves Christians but only did what they wanted to do. They did not do what God wanted. God called the Jews adulterers because they left God for what they wanted to do things that the rest of the world did. In the same way, James called certain Christians adulterers because they did not do the things Jesus commanded them to do (see: Jeremiah 6:3-9; Ezekiel 23:37).

See: [Adultery](#)

4:5-6

Who is the “jealous” one?

[4:5]

Some scholars think James spoke about God being “jealous”(φθόνος/g5355) for his people. That is, God cares for people and wants them for himself (see: Exodus 20:5; 34:14). Other scholars think the Holy Spirit caused this jealousy in God. That is, because the Holy Spirit lives inside Christians, God owns the Christian and has control over their lives. He is jealous when Christians do not do what he wants because they are not listening to his Holy Spirit. Other scholars think James spoke about Christian who were full of jealousy because they were selfish (see: 4:4).

How does God give “more grace?”

[4:6]

James spoke about God giving “more grace.” Some scholars think that because James spoke about God being jealous in verse five, he gives enough grace to keep his anger from destroying the Christian who disobeys God. Other scholars think James spoke about how all Christians’ fight against their own jealousy. God gives grace to help Christians to overcome this jealousy.

See: [Grace](#)

4:7-10**How do Christians “draw near” to God?**

[4:8]

James told Christians to “draw near” to God. That is, they come close to him because they love him and want to know him better. This came with the promise that God will draw near to anyone who wants to be close to God. James told Christians to “cleanse your hands” and to “purify your hearts.” Some scholars think that James wanted Christians to know that they needed to do these things to draw near to God. During the time of the Old Testament, priests were required to wash their bodies before going into the temple and serve God there (see: Exodus 30:20). In the New Testament, John also told Christians how they can draw near to God by confessing their sins to God. This cleansed them from the sin that holds back their relationship with God (see: 1 John 1:9). Also, John wrote that in the same way Jesus is pure, Christians can be pure because of the Holy Spirit inside of them (see: 1 John 3:2-3). This gives them confidence to draw near to God without fear.

Also, James told Christians to “grieve”(ταλαίπωρέω/g5003), to “mourn”(πενθέω/g3996), and to “cry”(κλαίω/g2799). Most scholars think James wanted Christians to have a deep sadness because of their sin. The apostle Paul experienced deep sadness for sin (see: Romans 7:21-25). Also these scholars think this sadness is to cause Christians to repent.

Finally, James told Christians to “humble”(ταπεινώω/g5013) themselves before the Lord. That is, Christians need to know their need for God. This is because they cannot be close to God without the power of God.

See: [Confess \(Confession\)](#); [Temple](#); [Purify \(Pure\)](#); [Confess \(Confession\)](#)

How can Christians be humble?

[4:10]

James wrote that Christians need to be humble. Also, he said God gives “grace to the humble.” To be humble, Christians must “submit”(υποτάσσω/g5293) themselves to God. This is, Christians do all that God wants them to do. Also, James told Christians to “resist”(ἀνθίστημι/g0436) the devil. Some scholars think James wanted to say that when Christians submit to God they can resist the devil. Other scholars think that to resisting the devil is to stand firmly against him (see: Ephesians 6:13; 1 Peter 5:8-9).

See: [Submit \(Submission\)](#); [Grace](#); [Submit \(Submission\)](#)

4:11-12**Why are Christians not to speak against one another?**

[4:11]

James said that a person who speaks against another person has become a “judge”(κρίνω/g2919). However, there is only one judge. That is, God is judge because he made the law (see: Romans 2:1). Only the one who makes the law can judge it correctly. One way Christians can speak against another Christian is to say that they did wrong when they did not actually do so (see: 1 Peter 2:1). Also, A second way is speaking against another Christian because they do not like something about them.

See: [Law of Moses](#)

4:13-17**Why are Christians to be careful with their plans for the future?**

[4:14]

James told Christians not to “boast”(καυχάομαι/g2744) about the things they will do. Some people talk about what they will be doing in the future without thinking of what God wants from them. James said that this makes them “arrogant”(ἀλαζονεία/g0212) plans. James wrote to those who talked much about what they wanted to do days, weeks, and years in the future. However, James wanted them to remember

that only God knew what was going to happen days, weeks, and years into the future. James said that this boasting was evil. Some scholars think that when James said to "do good," he was talking about making plans. That is, to do good is to trust God with the plans for the future. James told Christians to say instead that "if the Lord wills" their plans will happen.

See: [Will of God](#)

James 4:1

General Information:

In this chapter, the words "yourselves," "your," and "you" are plural and refer to the believers to whom James writes.

Connecting Statement:

James rebukes these believers for their worldliness and their lack of humility. He again urges them to watch how they speak to and about each other.

Where do quarrels and disputes among you come from?
The abstract nouns "quarrels" and "disputes" mean basically the same thing and can be translated with verbs. Alternate translation: "Why do you quarrel and dispute among yourselves?" or "Why do you fight among yourselves?"

Do they not come from your desires that fight among your members?

James uses this question to rebuke his audience. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "They come from your evil desires for things, desires that fight among your members." or "You quarrel and have disputes because of your desires that fight among your members."

Do they not come from your desires that fight among your members

James writes of the tension or conflict that people feel because of their different desires as if those desires were fighting. Alternate translation: "Do they not come because of the conflict you feel because of your different desires?" or "You quarrel and argue because of the tension caused by your different desires."

your desires that fight among your members

Possible meanings are 1) "members" refers to the parts of a person: his body, feelings, and thoughts. Each person wants more than one thing, but he cannot have them all. Alternate translation: "your conflicting desires within you" 2) "members" refers to the individual people in the church. Different members want different things. Alternate translation: "the conflicting desires among you all"

James 4:2

You murder and covet, and you are not able to obtain
The phrase "You murder" is probably a hyperbole. The words "murder" and "covet" are used to express how badly the people behave in order to

get what they want. Alternate translation: "You do all kinds of evil things to get what you cannot have"

You fight and quarrel

The words "fight" and "quarrel" mean basically the same thing. James uses them to emphasize how much the people argue among themselves. Alternate translation: "You constantly fight"

James 4:3

you ask wrongly

Possible meanings are 1) "you ask with wrong motives" or "you ask with bad attitudes" or 2) "you are asking for wrong things" or "you are asking for bad things"

James 4:4

You adulteresses!

James speaks of believers as being like wives who sleep with men other than their husbands. Alternate translation: "You are not being faithful to God!"

Do you not know ... God?

James uses this question to teach his audience. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know ... God!"

friendship with the world

This phrase refers to identifying with or participating in the world's value system and behavior.

friendship with the world

Here the world's value system is spoken of as if it were a person that others could be friends with.

friendship with the world is hostility against God

One who is friends with the world is an enemy of God. Here "friendship with the world" stands for being friends with the world, and "hostility against God" stands for being hostile against God. Alternate translation: "friends of the world are enemies of God"

James 4:5

Or do you think the scripture says in vain ... envious?"

This is a rhetorical question James uses to exhort his audience. To speak in vain is to speak uselessly. Alternate translation: "There is a reason that scripture says ... envious."

The Spirit he caused to live in us

Some versions, including the ULB and UDB, understand this as a reference to the Holy Spirit. Other versions translate this as "the spirit" and mean by it the human spirit that each person has been created to have. We suggest that you use the meaning that is presented in other translations used by your readers.

James 4:6**But God gives more grace**

How this phrase relates to the previous verse can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "But, even though our spirits may desire what we cannot have, God gives us even more grace if we will humble ourselves"

so the scripture

"that is why the scripture"

the proud

This refers to proud people in general. Alternate translation: "proud people"

the humble

This refers to humble people in general. Alternate translation: "humble people"

James 4:7**So submit**

"Because God gives grace to the humble, submit"

submit to God

"obey God"

Resist the devil

"Oppose the devil" or "Do not do what the devil wants"

he will flee

"he will run away"

you

Here this pronoun is plural and refers to James's audience.

James 4:8**General Information:**

The word "you" here is plural and refers to the scattered believers to whom James writes.

Come close to God

Here the idea of coming close stands for becoming honest and open with God.

Cleanse your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded

These are two phrases in parallel with each other.

Cleanse your hands

This expression is a command for people to do righteous acts instead of unrighteous acts. Alternate translation: "Behave in a way that honors God"

purify your hearts

Here "hearts" refers to a person's thoughts and emotions. Alternate translation: "make your thoughts and intentions right"

you double-minded people

The word "double-minded" refers to a person who cannot make a firm decision about something. Alternate translation: "you people who cannot decide if you want to obey God or not"

James 4:9**Grieve, mourn, and cry**

These three words have similar meanings. James uses them together to emphasize that the people should be truly sorry for not obeying God.

Let your laughter turn into mourning and your joy into gloom

This is saying the same thing in different ways for emphasis. The abstract nouns "laughter," "mourning," "joy," and "gloom" can be translated as verbs or adjectives. Alternate translation: "Stop laughing and mourn. Stop being joyful and be gloomy"

James 4:10**Humble yourselves before the Lord**

"Be humble toward God." Actions done with God in mind are often spoken of as being done in his physical presence.

he will exalt you

James indicates that God will honor the humble person by saying God will pick that person up off the ground physically from where that person had prostrated himself in humility. Alternate translation: "he will honor you"

James 4:11**brothers**

James speaks of the believers as if they are biological brothers. The term here includes women as well as men. Alternate translation: "fellow believers"

but a judge

"but you are acting like the person who gives the law"

James 4:12

Only one is the lawgiver and judge

This refers to God. "God is the only one who gives laws and judges people"

Who are you, you who judge your neighbor?

This is a rhetorical question James uses to scold his audience. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are just a human and cannot judge another human."

James 4:13

spend a year there

James speaks of spending time as if it were money. "stay there for a year"

James 4:14

Who knows what will happen tomorrow, and what is your life?

James uses these questions to correct his audience and to teach these believers that physical life is not that important. They can be expressed as statements. Alternate translation: "No one knows what will happen tomorrow, and your life does not last very long!"

For you are a mist that appears for a little while and then disappears

James speaks of people as if they were a mist that appears and then quickly goes away. Alternate translation: "You live for only a short amount of time, and then you die"

James 4:15

Instead, you should say

"Instead, your attitude should be"

we will live and do this or that

"we will live long enough to do what we have planned to do." The word "we" does not directly refer to James or his audience but is part of the example of how James's audience should consider the future.

James 4:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

James 4:17

for anyone who knows to do good but does not do it, for him it is sin

Anyone who fails to do the good he knows he should do is guilty of sin.

ULB Translation Questions

James 4:1

Why do the people have quarrels and disputes?

They have quarrels and disputes because they want different things.

James 4:3

Why do the believers not receive their requests to God?

They do not receive because they ask for bad things to be spent on their evil desires.

James 4:4

If a person decides to be a friend of the world, what is that person's relationship with God?

A person who decides to be a friend of the world makes himself an enemy of God.

James 4:6

Who does God resist, and to whom does he give grace?

God resists the proud, but gives grace to the humble.

James 4:7

What will the devil do when a believer subjects himself to God and resists the devil?

The devil will flee.

James 4:8

What will God do for those who draw near to him?

God will draw near to those who draw near to him.

James 4:11

What does James tell the believers not to do?

James tells the believers not to speak against one another.

James 4:15

What does James tell the believers to say about what will happen in the future?

James tells the believers to say that if the Lord allows, we will live and do this or that.

James 4:16

What does James say about those who boast about their plans?

James says that those who boast about their plans are doing evil.

James 4:17

What is it if someone knows to do good, but does not do it?

It is sin if someone knows to do good, but does not do it.

Chapter 5

¹ Come now, you who are rich, weep and wail because of the miseries coming on you. ² Your riches have rotted, and your clothes have become moth-eaten. ³ Your gold and your silver have become tarnished and their rust will be a witness against you. It will consume your flesh like fire. You have stored up your treasure for the last days. ⁴ Look, the wages you kept back from the laborers who mowed your fields is crying out against you. The cries of the harvesters have reached the ears of the Lord of hosts. ⁵ You have lived in luxury on the earth and indulged yourselves. You have fattened your hearts for a day of slaughter. ⁶ You have condemned and murdered the righteous person. He does not oppose you.

⁷ Be patient, then, brothers, until the Lord's coming. See how the farmer waits for the precious fruit from the ground and he is patient about it, until it receives the early and late rains. ⁸ You, too, be patient. Strengthen your hearts because the Lord's coming is near. ⁹ Do not complain, brothers, against one another, so that you will not be condemned. See, the judge is standing at the door. ¹⁰ Take an example, brothers, from the suffering and patience of the prophets, those who spoke in the name of the Lord. ¹¹ See, we regard those who endured as blessed. You have heard of the endurance of Job, and you know the purpose of the Lord, how he is very compassionate and merciful.

¹² Above all, my brothers, do not swear, either by heaven or by the earth, or by any other oath. Rather, let your "Yes" mean "Yes" and your "No" mean "No," so you do not fall under judgment.

¹³ Is anyone among you suffering hardship? Let him pray. Is anyone cheerful? Let him sing praise. ¹⁴ Is anyone among you sick? Let him call for the elders of the church, and let them pray over him. Let them anoint him with oil in the name of the Lord. ¹⁵ The prayer of faith will heal the sick person, and the Lord will raise him up. If he has committed sins, God will forgive him. ¹⁶ So confess your sins to one another and pray for each other so that you may be healed. The prayer of a righteous person is very strong in its working. ¹⁷ Elijah was a man just like us. He prayed earnestly that it would not rain, and it did not rain in the land for three years and six months. ¹⁸ Then Elijah prayed again. The heavens gave rain, and the earth produced its fruit.

¹⁹ My brothers, if anyone among you strays from the truth, and someone brings him back, ²⁰ that person should know that whoever turns a sinner from the error of his way will save him from death and will cover over a great number of sins.

James 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Eternity

This chapter contrasts living for things of this world, which will not last, with living for things that will last for eternity. It is also important to live with the expectation that Jesus will return soon. (See: eternity)

Oaths

Scholars are divided over whether this passage teaches all oaths are wrong. Most scholars believe some oaths are permissible and James instead is teaching Christians to have integrity.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Elijah

This story will be difficult to understand if the books of 1 and 2 Kings and 1 and 2 Chronicles have not yet been translated.

"Save his soul from death"

This probably teaches that the person who stops their sinful lifestyle will not be punished with physical death as a consequence of their sin. On the other hand, some scholars believe this passage teaches about eternal salvation. (See: sin and death and save)

James 5

5:1-6

Why does James tell Christians not to “store up treasure”?

[5:3]

James told Christians not to worry about getting money and possessions here on earth. James spoke to those who had much more money and than they needed to survive. James told rich people to use their money and possessions to honor God (see: 1 Timothy 6:17-19). He told Christians that the riches the world gave them cannot be taken to heaven when they died. James did not want Christians to think that being rich was wrong, but he wanted them to know that they needed to use their money and possessions to honor God. That is, they needed to use their riches to help the poor and sick in the church. By doing this, they followed Jesus' command to store their treasures in heaven (see: Matthew 6:19-20). God gave them these riches to honor him. Anything not used to honor him rots away in the same way fruit or meat rots, very quickly.

Advice to Translators: A possession is something that a person owns. When someone owns many things of great value they are called “riches.”

See: [Heaven](#)

Why did James say the “pay of the laborers cries out”?

[5:4]

James said that the “pay of the laborers is crying out.” He wanted Christians to know that landowners broke the law of God when they did not pay their workers on the day that they worked (see: Leviticus 19:13; Deuteronomy 24:14). If these people were not paid, they did not eat. James wanted Christians to know this was unjust. He said that God hears these cries, and he gave justice to the unjust (see: Malachi 3:5; Jeremiah 22:13-17).

See: [Justice \(Just, Unjust\)](#)

How were the righteous being condemned and killed?

[5:6]

James said that the people condemned and killed the righteous people. That is, people were killing people who did the right things. Perhaps James spoke to landowners who said their hired workers were guilty of things that they did not do. That is, they said that the innocent workers were guilty of wrong against them. Because the landowners were taking their workers to court, they took away their workers ability to make money. Because they did not make money, they did not eat. Because they did not eat, they died. Also, those who were judged guilty in the courts were killed. James said that those who did this were guilty of their workers deaths.

See: [Innocent](#); [Righteous \(Righteousness\)](#); [Guilty](#); [Innocent](#)

5:7-12

Why are Christians to be patient?

[5:7]

James told Christians to “be patient” (μακροθυμέω/g3114) when they suffer. He wanted them to be patient until Jesus came back to earth because he will make suffering stop.

Why did Christians need to stand firm?

[5:7]

James told Christians to be patient because Jesus was coming for them. Christians were suffering trials and persecution. James wanted them to know that they needed to hope in Jesus and have courage in his

coming for them. Also, he told Christians not to complain about each other because this caused them to forget about Jesus. Also, James told them to have “endurance” (ὕπομονή/g5281) in the same way Job did. Because Job endured, God honored him (see: Job 42:1-17).

See: [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#); [Persecute \(Persecution\)](#)

Why did James say not to take an oath?

[5:12]

James told Christians not to take “oaths” (ὀμνύω/g3660). He said that they were only to say “yes” and “no.” James wanted Christians to know that they needed to speak the truth always. If they took an oath, God judged them. He judged if they told the truth or not (see: Matthew 5:33-37).

5:13-18

Who are the sick?

[5:14]

James spoke about sick people.

Some scholars think James spoke about people who had physical suffering. That is, their bodies had something wrong with it and they were in pain. Some physical suffering only stay for a short time while other physical suffering continues for a long time in people’s body.

Also, scholars think James spoke to Christians who had spiritual suffering. That is, the enemy, Satan and his demons, tried to get them to sin or to reject Jesus. Other scholars think James wrote about Christians having severe physical suffering. James said that those suffering in this way needed other Christians to comfort them and perhaps help them defeat their suffering.

See: [Demon](#); [Demon](#)

What did James tell the sick to do?

[5:14]

James told sick Christians to go to the elders of their local church and have them pray for them. The elders spoke a “prayer” (εὐχή/g2171) of faith. That is, they prayed the will of God and trusted God’s answer (see: 4:13-15). James said this prayer saved sick people. Some scholars think the word “save” meant saved from sin and spiritual death. That is, it helped them to be able to live together with God forever in heaven. Other scholars think the word “save” means their physical health will be saved. That is, the sick person will become well.

See: [Elder](#)

Who are righteous people?

[5:16]

James spoke about people who did the right things. Some scholars think James spoke about people made righteous by Jesus (see: Roman 5:18-19). Other scholars think James spoke about people Jesus made at peace with God and those who Jesus helped to do the right things (see: 1 John 3:7). That is, Jesus saved them, and they lived their lives in a way that honored Jesus because he saved them.

Why does the prayer of the person who greatly honors God has power?

[5:16]

Some scholars think the prayer of a person who greatly honors God has great power because it is spoken with complete trust that God will answer. Other scholars think James spoke that this prayer had power because these people knew God alone had the power to make their request happen.

5:19-20**Who are those who stray from the truth?**

[5:19]

James said that those who “stray”(πλανάω/g4105) from the truth chose to leave the truth of Jesus.

Some scholars think these people stopped listening to the truth about the gospel that had been taught to them. That is, they rejected the gospel. Paul also spoke about these people (see: Timothy 4:2-4).

Other scholars think James spoke to those Christians who were being led back into following the Jewish Law of Moses to save them from their sins.

Other scholars think James spoke to Christians who chose to return to doing sinful thing and thinking sinful things. That is, they knew what was right, but chose to do what was wrong.

See: [Law of Moses](#); [Law of Moses](#)

What happens when those who are sinning “turn back”?

[5:19]

James says good things about people who encourage a “straying”(πλανάω/g4105) brother or sister to stop sinning and begin to do the right things.

Some scholars think that he wanted to say that this will to “rescue”(σώζω/g4982) the sinner from eternal death. That is, they will not be separated from God forever in hell.

Other scholars think that this will help the sinner from being punished by dying on the earth because of their sin. James told Christians that it was good for them to help a brother or sister straying from the truth. Also, James told these Christians to encourage straying people.

See: [Hell](#)

James 5:1**Connecting Statement:**

James warns rich people about their focus on pleasure and riches.

you who are rich

Possible meanings are 1) James is giving a strong warning to wealthy believers or 2) James is talking about wealthy unbelievers. Alternate translation: "you who are rich and say you honor God"

because of the miseries coming on you

James states that these people will suffer terribly in the future and writes as if their sufferings were objects that were coming toward them. The abstract noun "miseries" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "because you will suffer terribly in the future"

James 5:2**Your riches have rotted, and your clothes have become moth-eaten.**

Earthly riches do not last nor do they have any eternal value. James speaks of these events as if they had already happened. Alternate translation:

"Your riches will rot, and your clothes will be eaten by moths."

riches ... clothes

These things are mentioned as examples of things that are valuable to wealthy people.

James 5:3**Your gold and your silver have become tarnished**

Earthly riches do not last nor do they have any eternal value. James speaks of these events as if they had already happened. Alternate translation: "Your gold and silver will become tarnished"

gold ... silver

These things are mentioned as examples of things that are valuable to wealthy people.

have become tarnished ... their rust

Gold does not actually tarnish, and gold and silver do not actually rust. James wants to emphasize that these precious metals will be ruined. Alternate translation: "are ruined ... their ruined condition"

their rust will be a witness against you. It

James wrote of their valuable things being ruined as if they were a person in a courtroom accusing the wicked of their crimes. Alternate translation:

"and when God judges you, your ruined treasures will be like someone who accuses you in court. Their corrosion" (See: and)

will consume ... like fire

Here the corrosion is spoken of as if it were a fire that will burn up their owners.

your flesh

Here "flesh" stands for the physical body.

fire

The idea of fire here is meant to lead people to remember that fire often stands for God's punishment that will come on all the wicked.

for the last days

This refers to the time right before God comes to judge all people. The wicked think they are storing up riches for the future, but what they are doing is storing up judgment. Alternate translation: "for when God is about to judge you"

James 5:4

Connecting Statement:

James continues to warn rich people about their focus on pleasure and riches.

the wages you kept back from the laborers who mowed your fields is crying out against you

The money that should have been paid is spoken of as a person who is shouting because of the injustice done to him. Alternate translation: "God can see that you kept back the wages you should have given to those who mowed your fields"

The cries of the harvesters have reached the ears of the Lord of hosts

The shouts of the harvesters are spoken of as if they could be heard in heaven. Alternate translation: "The Lord of hosts has heard the cries of the harvesters"

the ears of the Lord of hosts

God is spoken of as if he had ears as humans have.

James 5:5

You have fattened your hearts for a day of slaughter

Here people are viewed as if they were cattle, luxuriously fed on grain so they would become fattened to be slaughtered for a feast. However, no one will feast at the time of judgment. Alternate translation: "Your greed has only prepared you for harsh eternal judgment"

your hearts

The "heart" was considered to be the center of human desire, and here stands for the entire person.

James 5:6

You have condemned ... the righteous person

This is probably not "condemned" in the legal sense of a judge passing a sentence of death on a criminal. Instead, it probably refers to the wicked and powerful people who decide to mistreat the poor until they die.

the righteous person. He does not

"the people who do what is right. They do not."

Here "the righteous person" refers to righteous people in general and not to a specific person.

Alternate translation: "righteous people. They do not"

James 5:7

General Information:

In closing, James reminds the believers about the Lord's coming and gives several short lessons on how to live for the Lord.

Connecting Statement:

James changes topics from a rebuke of the rich people to an exhortation to the believers.

Be patient, then

"Because of this, wait and be calm"

until the Lord's coming

This phrase refers to the return of Jesus, when he will begin his kingdom on the earth and judge all people. Alternate translation: "until Christ's return"

the farmer

James makes an analogy using farmers and believers to teach what it means to be patient.

James 5:8

Strengthen your hearts

James is equating the believers' hearts to their will to remain committed. Alternate translation: "Stay committed" or "Keep your faith strong"

the Lord's coming is near

"the Lord will return soon"

James 5:9

Do not complain, brothers ... you

James is writing to all the scattered Jewish believers.

against one another

"about each other"

you will not be condemned

This can be stated in the active. Alternate translation: "Christ will not condemn you"

See, the judge

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the judge"

the judge is standing at the door

James compares Jesus, the judge, to a person about to walk through a door to emphasize how soon Jesus will return to judge the world. Alternate translation: "the judge is coming soon"

James 5:10

the suffering and patience of the prophets, those who spoke in the name of the Lord

"how the prophets who spoke in the name of the Lord suffered persecution with patience"

spoke in the name of the Lord

"Name" here is a metonym for the person of the Lord. Alternate translation: "spoke by the authority of the Lord" or "spoke for the Lord to the people"

James 5:11

See, we regard

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: we regard"

those who endured

"those who continued obeying God even through hardship"

James 5:12

Above all, my brothers,

"This is important, my brothers:" or "Especially, my brothers,"

my brothers

This refers to all believers including women. Alternate translation: "my fellow believers"

do not swear

To "swear" is to say that you will do something, or that something is true, and to be held accountable by a higher authority. Alternate translation: "do not make an oath" or "do not make a vow"

either by heaven or by the earth

The words "heaven" and "earth" refer to the spiritual or human authorities that are in heaven and earth.

let your "Yes" mean "Yes" and your "No" mean "No,"

James is telling people to speak the truth without making an oath. Alternate translation: "If you say 'Yes' or 'No,' say it truthfully"

so you do not fall under judgment

Being condemned is spoken of as if one had fallen, crushed by the weight of something heavy. Alternate translation: "so God will not punish you"

James 5:13

Is anyone among you suffering hardship? Let him pray

James uses this question to cause the readers to reflect on their need. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "If anyone is enduring troubles, he should pray"

Is anyone cheerful? Let him sing praise

James uses this question to cause the readers to reflect on their blessings. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "If anyone is happy, he should sing songs of praise"

James 5:14

Is anyone among you sick? Let him call

James uses this question to cause the readers to reflect on their need. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "If anyone is sick, he should call"

in the name of the Lord

"Name" is a metonym for the person of Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "by the authority of the Lord" or "with the authority that the Lord has given them"

James 5:15

The prayer of faith will heal the sick person

The writer speaks of God hearing believers pray for sick people and healing those people as if the prayers themselves healed the people. Alternate translation: "The Lord will hear the prayer of faith and will heal the sick person"

The prayer of faith

"The prayer made by believers" or "The prayer that people pray believing God will do as they ask"

the Lord will raise him up

"the Lord will make him well" or "the Lord will enable him to resume his normal life"

James 5:16

General Information:

As these are Jewish believers, James reminds them to pray by recalling one of the prophets of old and that prophet's practical prayers.

So confess your sins

Admit to other believers things you did wrong so that you can be forgiven.

to one another

"to each other"

so that you may be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that God may heal you"

The prayer of a righteous person is very strong in its working

Prayer is presented as if it were an object that was strong or powerful. Alternate translation: "When the person who obeys God prays, God will do great things"

James 5:17

prayed earnestly

"prayed eagerly" or "prayed passionately"

in the land

There may have been rain in lands other than Israel, but it did not rain in Israel.

three ... six

"3 ... 6"

James 5:18

The heavens gave rain

"The heavens" probably refers to the sky, which is presented as the source of the rain. Alternate translation: "Rain fell from the sky"

the earth produced its fruit

Here the earth is presented as the source of the crops.

fruit

Here "fruit" stands for all the crops of the farmers.

James 5:19

brothers

Here this word probably refers to both men and women. Alternate translation: "fellow believers"

if anyone among you strays from the truth, and someone brings him back

A believer who stops trusting in God and obeying him is spoken of as if he were a sheep that wandered away from the flock. The person who persuades him to trust in God again is spoken of as if he were a shepherd who goes to search for the lost sheep. Alternate translation: "whenever anyone stops obeying God, and another person helps him start obeying again"

James 5:20

whoever turns a sinner from the error of his way ... will cover over a great number of sins

James means that God will use the actions of this person to persuade the sinner to repent and be saved. But James speaks as if it were this other person who actually saved the sinner's soul from death.

will save him from death and will cover over a great number of sins

Here "death" refers to spiritual death, eternal separation from God. Alternate translation: "will save him from spiritual death, and God will forgive the sinner for all of his sins"

will cover over a great number of sins

Possible meanings are 1) the person who brings back the disobedient brother will have his sins forgiven or 2) the disobedient brother, when he returns to the Lord, will have his sins forgiven. Sins are spoken of as if they were objects that God could cover so that he would not see them, so that he would forgive them.

ULB Translation Questions

James 5:3

What have the rich, about whom James is talking, done in the last days which will testify against them?

The rich have hoarded their treasure.

James 5:4

How have these rich treated their workers?

These rich have not paid their workers.

James 5:6

How have these rich treated the righteous man?

These rich have condemned and killed the righteous man.

James 5:7

What does James say the believer's attitude should be toward the coming of the Lord?

The believers should wait patiently for the coming of the Lord.

James 5:8

What does James say the believer's attitude should be toward the coming of the Lord?

The believers should wait patiently for the coming of the Lord.

James 5:10

What character traits does James say the Old Testament prophets demonstrated to us?

The Old Testament prophets demonstrated patience and perseverance in suffering.

James 5:11

What character traits does James say the Old Testament prophets demonstrated to us?

The Old Testament prophets demonstrated patience and perseverance in suffering.

James 5:12

What does James say about the reliability of a believer's "Yes" and "No?"

A believer's "Yes" must mean "Yes" and his "No" must mean "No".

James 5:14

What should those who are sick do?

The sick should call for the elders so they can pray over him and anoint him with oil.

James 5:16

What two things does James say believers should do with each other in order to be healed?

Believers should confess to one another and pray for one another.

What does James say the example of Elijah shows us about prayer?

The example of Elijah shows us that the prayer of a righteous man produces great effects.

James 5:17

What does James say the example of Elijah shows us about prayer?

The example of Elijah shows us that the prayer of a righteous man produces great effects.

James 5:18

What does James say the example of Elijah shows us about prayer?

The example of Elijah shows us that the prayer of a righteous man produces great effects.

James 5:20

What does someone accomplish who leads a sinner out of the error of his way?

The person who leads a sinner out of the error of his way saves a soul from death and covers a multitude of sins.

Language: Lamboya

Book: James

James

ULB Translation Words

Abraham

Related Words:

Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldeans](#), [Sarah](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abraham, Abraham's, Abram

Christ

Related Ideas:

Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.

- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus." "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who will reign forever.
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah."
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term, as in "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Christ, Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- James 05:16-18
- John 01:19-21
- John 01:24-25
- Mark 09:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H452, G2243

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Elijah, Elijah's

Eve**Facts:**

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](#), [life](#), [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:03
- Genesis 03:20
- Genesis 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2332, G2096

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eve, Eve's

God**Related Ideas:**

the living God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.

- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
- Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

Forms Found in the English ULB:

God, God's, the living God

Greek

Related Words:

Grecian

Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. It is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(See also: [Aram](#), [Gentile](#), [Greece](#), [Hebrew](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Greek, Greeks, Grecian

Isaac**Facts:**

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaac, Isaac's

Jesus

Related Ideas:

the Lord Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves."

- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" is spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesu," "Jezus," "Yesus", and "Hesu" are some of the ways that this name is translated into different languages.
- Also consider how this names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesus, the Lord Jesus

Job

Facts:

Job was a man who is described in the Bible as blameless and righteous before God. He is best known for persevering in his faith in God through times of terrible suffering.

- Job lived in the land of Uz, which was located somewhere east of the land of Canaan, possibly near the region of the Edomites.
- It is thought that he lived during the time of Esau and Jacob because one of Job's friends was a "Temanite," which was a people group named after Esau's grandson.
- The Old Testament book of Job tells about how Job and others responded to his suffering. It also gives God's viewpoint as the sovereign creator and ruler of the universe.
- After all the disasters, God eventually healed Job and gave him more children and wealth.
- The book of Job says that he was very old when he died.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Esau](#), [flood](#), [Jacob](#)[Noah](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- James 05:9-11
- Job 01:01
- Job 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H347, G2492

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Job, Job's

Rahab

Facts:

Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

- Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
- Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
- She and her family were spared when Jericho was destroyed. Then Rahab and her family lived with the Israelites.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jericho](#), [prostitute](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:29-31
- James 02:25
- Joshua 02:21
- Joshua 06:17-19
- Matthew 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7343, G4460

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rahab

adultery

Related Ideas:

adulterer, adulteress, adulterous, immoral woman

Definition:

The term "adultery" refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term "adulterous" describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term "adulterer" refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term "adulteress" is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term "adulterous" is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means "adultery," this term could be translated with a phrase such as "having sexual relations with someone else's wife" or "being intimate with another person's spouse."
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as "sleeping with someone else's spouse" or "being unfaithful to one's wife."
- When "adulterous" is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God's view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of "adulterous" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "immoral" or "like an unfaithful spouse."

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 02:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2114, H5003, H5004, H5237, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

Forms Found in the English ULB:

adulterer, adulterers, adulteress, adulteresses, adulteries, adulterous, adultery, immoral woman

afflict

Related Ideas:

affliction, difficulty

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: [leper](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H5221, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G1453, G2346, G2347, G2852, G3804, G4912

Forms Found in the English ULB:

afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions, difficulties

age**Related Ideas:**

aged, from ancient times, old age

Definition:

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
- Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
- The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
- The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
- The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

Forms Found in the English ULB:

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

Forms Found in the English ULB:

altar, altars

anger

Related Ideas:

angry, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

Definition:

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated, and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."
- A "quick-tempered" person becomes angry quickly and easily.
- To be "indignant" is to grieve to the point of anger or to be angry because someone has been arrogant.

(See also: [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 04:26
- Exodus 32:11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- John 06:52-53
- Mark 10:14
- Matthew 26:08
- Psalms 018:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H1984, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2740, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, H7852, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G3950, G4360, G5520

Forms Found in the English ULB:

anger, anger burned, angered, angry, burning anger, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

anoint

Related Ideas:

perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
- To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
- In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
- A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G3462, G3464, G5545, G5548

Forms Found in the English ULB:

anoint, anointed, anointing, perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

arrogant

Related Ideas:

arrogance, arrogantly, pomp

Definition:

The term "arrogant" means proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- A person who is arrogant usually thinks that other people are not as important or talented as he is.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.
- To act "arrogantly" or "in arrogance" is to act as an arrogant person.
- "Pomp" is arrogant, vain glory, a magnificent show.

(See also: [acknowledge](#), [boast](#), [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:18
- 2 Peter 02:18
- Ezekiel 16:49
- Proverbs 16:05
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1346, H1347, H2086, H2087, H2102, H2103, H3093, H5678, H6075, H6277, H7292, G212, G5244, G5450

Forms Found in the English ULB:

arrogance, arrogant, arrogant speech, arrogantly, pomp

believe**Related Ideas:**

be persuaded, belief, believer, have faith, persuade, persuasive

Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

- believe
 - To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
 - To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.
 - To persuade someone is to get that person to believe that something is true.
- believe in
 - To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
 - When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
 - The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
 - To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

Translation Suggestions:

Translating "believe" and "believe in":

* To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right." * To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

Translating "believer":

* Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ." * This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him." * Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus." * The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

Translating "unbelief" and "unbeliever": * Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing." * The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18

- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H3948, H6601, G544, G569, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103

Forms Found in the English ULB:

am persuaded, belief, believe, believed, believer, believers, believes, believing, has faith, persuade, persuaded, persuading, persuasiveness, were persuaded

beloved

Related Ideas:

dear, lovely, treasured

Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
- God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."
- Something or someone who is "lovely" attracts the love and good desires of others.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G26, G27, G5207

Forms Found in the English ULB:

beloved, dear, lovely, treasured

bless

Related Ideas:

happier, happy

Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H8055, H1288, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G3741

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bless, blessed, blesses, blessing, blessings, happier, happy

boast**Related Ideas:**

boastful

Definition:

The term "boast" means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is "boastful" talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for "boasting in" their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead "boast" or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "boast" could include "brag" or "talk proudly" or "be proud."
- The term "boastful" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "full of prideful talk" or "prideful" or "talking proudly about oneself."
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as "take pride in" or "exalt in" or "be very glad about" or "give thanks to God about."
- Some languages have two words for "pride": one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one's work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- James 03:14
- James 04:15-17
- Psalms 044:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G1461, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

Forms Found in the English ULB:

boast, boasted, boastful, boasting, boasts, reason for boasting

body**Related Ideas:**

bodily, body of Christ, carcass, corpse

Definition:

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term "body" refers to a dead person. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse." The dead body of an animal is called a "carcass."
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ." Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members. Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
- When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5315, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4561, G4954, G4983

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bodies, bodily, body, carcass, carcasses, corpse, corpses

brother**Related Ideas:**

brotherhood

Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.

- In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

Forms Found in the English ULB:

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

call

Related Ideas:

appeal to, invite, summon

Definition:

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."

- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
- To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.
- To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term "church" refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term "the Church" often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a "called out" assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter ("Church") to distinguish it from the local church.

- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the "church at Ephesus."
- In the Bible, "church" does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "church" could be translated as a "gathering together" or "assembly" or "congregation" or "ones who meet together."
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of "church" does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate "assembly" in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation.

(See also: [assembly](#), [believe](#), [Christian](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- 1 Timothy 03:05
- Acts 09:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 04:15
- Ephesians 05:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 04:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

Forms Found in the English ULB:

church, churches

clothed

Related Ideas:

cloth, clothe, cover, dressed, garment, put on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is outside your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."
- All of the clothes a person wears is called his "wardrobe."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.

- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
- The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H155, H899, H2290, H3680, H3736, H3801, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4254, H4374, H5526, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5409, G5509

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloth, clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, cover, covered, coverings, coverings for their loins, covers, dressed, garment, garments, put ... on, putting ... on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear, wearing, worn

commit

Related Ideas:

commitment

Definition:

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refer to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
- To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- To "commit" something to someone is to give that thing completely to that person.
- To "commit" someone to another person is to put someone either in the care of or under the guard of that other person.
- The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
- The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
- The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made," depending on the context.

(See also: [adultery](#), [faithful](#), [promise](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4203

Forms Found in the English ULB:

commit, commitment, commits, committed, committing

compassion**Related Ideas:**

compassionate, deal gently with, pity, sympathy

Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul's letter to the Colossians, he tells them to "clothe themselves with compassion." He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.
- To have "sympathy" for someone is to understand how that person feels and to want to help him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of "compassion" is "bowels of mercy." This is an expression that means "mercy" or "pity." Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "a deep caring for" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:41
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H2580, H2603, H5150, H5162, H5164, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

Forms Found in the English ULB:

compassion, compassionate, compassions, deal gently with, pitied, pity, sympathy

conceive**Related Ideas:**

conception

Definition:

The terms "conceive" and "conception" usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase "conceive a child" could be translated as, "become pregnant" or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.

- The related term "conception" could be translated as, "beginning of a pregnancy" or "moment of becoming pregnant."
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, "think of" or "plan" or "create," depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, "when sin is conceived" which means "when sin is first thought of" or "at the very start of a sin" or "when a sin first begins."

(See also: [create](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 02:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 02:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G2602, G2845, G4815

Forms Found in the English ULB:

conceive, conceived, conceives, conception

condemn

Related Ideas:

condemnation, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- To "denounce" someone is to say that he is guilty of great evil.
- The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone. The word "judgment" means the same as "condemnation."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
- The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as, "judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
- The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H6600, H7561, H8199, H8381, G843, G1349, H1882, G1935, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920

Forms Found in the English ULB:

condemn, condemnation, condemned, condemning, condemns, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

confess

Related Ideas:

confession, profess

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
- Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

Forms Found in the English ULB:

confess, confessed, confesses, confessing, confession, profess

consume**Related Ideas:**

swallow

Definition:

The term "consume" literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word "consume" often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a "consuming fire," which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, "consume the land" could be translated as "destroy the land."

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as "destroy."
- When fire is referred to, "consume" could be translated as "burn up."
- The burning bush that Moses saw "was not consumed" which could be translated as, "did not get burned up" or "did not burn up."
- When referring to eating, "consume" could be translated as "eat" or "devour."
- If someone's strength is "consumed," it means his strength is "used up" or "gone."
- The expression, "God is a consuming fire" could be translated as, "God is like a fire that burns things up" or "God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire."

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H1086, H1104, H1105, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H5595, H7462, H8046, H8552, G355, G2068, G2618, G2654, G2666, G2719, G5315

Forms Found in the English ULB:

consume, consumed, consumes, consuming, swallow, swallowed, swallows

court**Related Ideas:**

courtyard

Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.

- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
- Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
- The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

Forms Found in the English ULB:

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

creature

Definition:

The term "creature" refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing "living creatures" in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term "creation" has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term "creature" only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "creature" could be translated as, "being" or "living being" or "created being."
- The plural, "creatures" could be translated as "all living things" or "people and animals" or "animals" or "human beings."

(See also: [create](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 04:10-12
- Ezekiel 01:09

- Joshua 10:28
- Leviticus 11:46-47
- Revelation 19:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H8318, H8577, G2226, G2938

Forms Found in the English ULB:

creature, creatures

crown

Related Ideas:

crest, garland, wreath

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to "crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means to "honor."

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown is a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- If a person is "crowned," this means that a crown was put on his head.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- A "crest" is a crown or a piece of metal or expensive wood with a design on it or something else that people recognize as a symbol of the king or another official. A person whom the official wants to honor will wear the "crest" or put it on the animal that he rides or that pulls his chariot.
- A "garland" and "a wreath" are a crown or necklace made of flowers or leaves.

Sometimes "crown" is used figuratively. * The figurative use of to "crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King. * Pauls calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
- The figurative use of to "crown" could be translated as to "honor" or to "decorate."
- The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as, "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

- John 19:03
- Lamentations 05:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 04:01
- Psalms 021:03
- Revelation 03:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

Forms Found in the English ULB:

crest, crown, crowned, crowns, garland, wreath

cry**Related Ideas:**

outcry, raised his voice, scream, shout, speak out, speak loudly

Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase "cry out" also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
- An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8643, H8663, G310, G349, G400, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cried, cried for help, cried out, cries, cries of distress, cries out, cry, cry ... for help, cry aloud, cry of distress, cry out, crying, crying out, outcries, outcry, raised ... voice, scream, screams, shout, shout out loud, shouted, shouting, shouting out, shouts, speak out, spoke loudly

curse**Related Ideas:**

accursed, speak evil

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2194, H2778, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672

Forms Found in the English ULB:

accursed, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, speaks evil

day

Related Ideas:

daily, daytime, morning, today

Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](#), [last day](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 20:06

- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

Forms Found in the English ULB:

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

death

Related Ideas:

breathed their last, dead, deadly, deadness, deathly, die, lethal, mortal, stop breathing

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.
- The words "deadly" and "lethal" describe something that causes someone to die.
- Something that is "mortal" can die; it does not live forever.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate the words "die," "death," and "dead," it is usually best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death. This is true both when "death" refers to physical death and when it refers to spiritual death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died."
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19

- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10
- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H7819, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

Forms Found in the English ULB:

about to die, breathed ... last, causes ... death, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deathly, deaths, die, die with, died, dies, dying, fatal, lethal, mortal, stop breathing, stops breathing

deceive

Related Ideas:

lie, deal falsely, deceit, deception, deceptive, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, flatter, illusion, trick

Definition:

The word "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

- The words "deceit" and "deception" can refer to an act or habit of deceiving others or to a message that is not truthful.
- A "deceiver" is someone who causes others to believe something that is not true. For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- The words "deceitful" and "deceptive" can describe people who deceive others or to messages or actions that are meant to deceive others.
- To "entice" someone is to deceive him into thinking that he will enjoy doing something evil.
- To "defraud" someone is to use deceit to get from him something that he would not give if he knew the truth.
- To "flatter" someone is to praise him falsely so that he will do what the speaker wants him to do.
- To "lie" to someone or to tell a "lie" is not the same as to lie down to go to sleep.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "deceive" could be translated as "lie to," "mislead," "trick," or "fool."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12

- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H2505, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4604, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7723, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G2296, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423, G5571

Forms Found in the English ULB:

a lie, deal falsely, deceit, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deceive, deceived, deceiver, deceivers, deceives, deceiving, deception, deceptive, defraud, defrauded, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, falsely, flatter, flattering, flatters, flattery, illusions, liar, liars, lies, trick

defile

Related Ideas:

pollute, pollution, stain

Definition:

The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- A "stain" is a dirty mark that is hard to clean.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "defile" can also be translated as "cause to be unclean" or "cause to be unrighteous" or "cause to be ritually unacceptable."
- To "be defiled" could be translated as "become unclean" or "be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)" or "become ritually unacceptable."

(See also: [clean](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:08
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:04
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4695

Forms Found in the English ULB:

are defiled, be defiled, defile, defiled, defiles, defiling, polluted, pollutes, pollution, stain, stained, was defiled, were defiled

demon

Related Ideas:

demonic

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), [god](#), [god](#), [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- James 02:19
- James 03:15
- Luke 04:36
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 04:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151

Forms Found in the English ULB:

demon, demonic, demons

destroy

Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
- The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

dishonor**Related Ideas:**

dishonorable, lightly esteemed

Definition:

The term "dishonor" means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term "dishonorable" describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes "dishonorable" is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.

- This could be translated as to "not honor" or to "treat with no respect."
- The noun "dishonor" could be translated as "disrespect" or "loss of honor."
- Depending on the context, "dishonorable" could also be translated as "not honorable" or "shameful" or "not worthwhile" or "not valuable."
- A person who is "lightly esteemed" is dishonored by people who refuse to give him the honor he deserves.

(See also: [disgrace](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:10
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Ezekiel 22:07
- John 08:48
- Leviticus 18:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1540, H2490, H2781, H3637, H3639, H5006, H5034, H6173, H7034, H7036, H7043, G818, G819, G820, G2617

Forms Found in the English ULB:

dishonor, dishonorable, dishonored, dishonors, lightly esteemed

earth

Related Ideas:

clay, dust, earthen, earthly, ground, land, soil

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth.
- The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.
- The term "earthen" describes something that is made of clay

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil" or "clay."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10

- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H80, H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2868, G2886, G3625, G5517, G5522

Forms Found in the English ULB:

clay, dust, earth, earth's, earthen, earthly, ground, land, lands, soil

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

Forms Found in the English ULB:

elder, elders

endure

Related Ideas:

endurance, patient endurance, put up with, resist, stand

Definition:

The term "endure" means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term "endurance" can mean "patience" or "bearing up under a trial" or "persevering when being persecuted."

- The encouragement to Christians to "endure to the end" is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To "endure suffering" can also mean to "experience suffering."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "endure" could include "persevere" or "keep believing" or "continue to do what God wants you to do" or "stand firm."
- In some contexts, to "endure" could be translated as to "experience" or to "go through."
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term "endure" could also be translated as "last" or "continue." The phrase "will not endure" could be translated as "will not last" or "will not continue to survive."
- Ways to translate "endurance" could include "perseverance" or "continuing to believe" or "remaining faithful."

(See also: [persevere](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:03
- James 01:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, H6965, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

Forms Found in the English ULB:

endurance, endure, endured, endures, enduring, patient endurance, put up with, resist, stand

evil

Related Ideas:

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

Forms Found in the English ULB:

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

exalt**Related Ideas:**

exaltation, high position, leadership position, lifted up

Definition:

To exalt is to lift up. Often exalt means to praise or honor someone or something. It can also mean to put someone in an honored position of leadership.

- In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for honoring God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he thinks about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "exalt" could include "highly praise" or "honor greatly" or "extol" or "speak highly of."
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means "put in a higher position" or "give more honor to" or "talk about proudly."
- "Do not exalt yourself" could also be translated as "Do not think of yourself too highly" or "Do not brag about yourself."
- "Those that exalt themselves" could also be translated as "Those who think proudly about themselves" or "Those who boast about themselves."

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), [boast](#), [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H1362, H1364, H4791, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

Forms Found in the English ULB:

exalt, exaltation, exalted, exalting, exalts, high position, leadership positions, lifted up, lofty

face**Related Ideas:**

before, facedown, facial, presence, surface

Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H2122, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

Forms Found in the English ULB:

before, face, faced, facedown, faces, facial, facing, presence, surface

faith

Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

Forms Found in the English ULB:

faith

father

Related Ideas:

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. * A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father. * A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather. * An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor. * A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father. * An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan. * To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

- The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
- The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

favor

Related Ideas:

favorable, favoritism, privilege, request for favor, show favor

Definition:

To "favor" is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term "favoritism" means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression "find favor" with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
- A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include, "blessing" or "benefit" or "credit."
- The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
- The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means "the one who is preferred or loved best."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2604, H2617, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965, H8467, G1184, G3685, G3982, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

Forms Found in the English ULB:

favor, favorable, favored, favoritism, favors, privilege, request for favor, seek ... favor, seeking the favor, show favor, shown favor, sought ... favor

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.

- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

Forms Found in the English ULB:

fig, figs

fir

Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

- Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
- In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
- Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 27:4-5
- Isaiah 37:24-25
- Isaiah 41:19-20
- Isaiah 44:14
- Isaiah 60:12-13
- Psalms 104:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

Forms Found in the English ULB:

fir, firs

fire

Related Ideas:

blazing, fiery, firebrands, inflame, kindle

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- A fire that is "blazing" is very hot and has large flames.
- A "fire brand" is a piece of burning wood.
- To "set on fire" or "set fire to" something is to make it start burning with fire.
- To "inflamm" something is to make it start burning.
- To "kindle" a fire is to start that fire burning.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.

The word "fire" and ideas related to fire are also used figuratively. * The term "fire" can refer to judgment or purification. * The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified." * Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H1814, H2734, H2740, H3341, H3857, H4168, H5135, H6315, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G2618, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

Forms Found in the English ULB:

blazing, fiery, fire, firebrands, fires, flaming, kindle, kindled, kindles, set fire to, set ... on fire, sets ... on fire

firstfruit**Definition:**

The term "firstfruits" refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the "firstfruits" of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the "firstfruits" of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as "first portion (of crops)" or "first part of the harvest."
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 02:03
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

Forms Found in the English ULB:

firstfruit, firstfruits

flesh

Related Ideas:

fleshly, human, living creatures, meat, physical

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to talk about something that is associated with being human. For example, to decide something according to the flesh means to decide something according to human standards.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. . It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07

- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4561

Forms Found in the English ULB:

flesh, fleshly, human, humans, living creatures, meat, physical

fool

Related Ideas:

folly, foolish, foolishly, foolishness, insane, insanity, out of his mind, senseless, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

Definition:

The term "fool" refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term "foolish" describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term "fool" usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term "folly" refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often "folly" also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.
- A person who is "insane" or suffering from "insanity" is unable to know truth from error, right from wrong, or good from evil and often acts without knowing what he is doing.
- Something that is hollow has nothing on its inside.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "fool" could be translated as "foolish person" or "unwise person" or "senseless person" or "ungodly person."
- Ways to translate "foolish" could include "lacking understanding" or "unwise" or "senseless."

(See also: [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:17
- Ephesians 05:15
- Galatians 03:03
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 25:08
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 049:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H191, H196, H200, H1197, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8604,

G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912, G3913

Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of disgraceful folly, acted ... foolishly, disgraceful folly, folly, fool, foolish, foolishness, fools, insane, insanity, out of ... mind, senseless, spoken ... foolishly, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

footstool

Definition:

The term "footstool" refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a "footstool" was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says "I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet" he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God's will.
- To "worship at God's footstool" means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God's "footstool." This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

Forms Found in the English ULB:

footstool

forgive

Related Ideas:

forgiven, forgiveness, pardon

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, G859, G863, G2433, G5483

Forms Found in the English ULB:

forgave, forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, forgives, pardon, pardoned

free

Related Ideas:

freedom, freeman, liberty, volunteer, without cost, without paying for it

Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.
- To "volunteer" is to freely and willingly agree to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6340, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

Forms Found in the English ULB:

free, freed, freedom, freeing, freely, freely gave, freeman, frees, liberty, set ... free, volunteer, volunteered, without cost, without paying for it

fruit**Related Ideas:**

bear fruit, crop, fruitful, produce, productive land, unfruitful

Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. * A "fruitful" plant is one that has a lot of good fruit. * The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains. * The term "crop" can refer to what people have planted for food. * The term "crop" can refer to the food that is harvested at one time.

Sometimes the term "fruit" and ideas related to it are used figuratively. * In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise. * The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces"—that is, children. * The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like. * The expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him. * The term "fruitful" can be used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."

- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
- The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a woman gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
- Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3018, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6499, H6509, H6529, H6631, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear fruit, crop, crops, fruit, fruitful, fruits, produce, productive land, unfruitful

fulfill

Related Ideas:

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
- The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
- Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

Forms Found in the English ULB:

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

gift

Related Ideas:

give, gracious gift

Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:01
- 2 Samuel 11:08
- Acts 08:20
- Acts 10:04
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 01:17
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 08:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5379, H7810, H7964, H8641, G331, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5485, G5486

Forms Found in the English ULB:

gift, gifts, give, gracious gift

glory

Related Ideas:

beautiful, beauty, glorify, glorious, take pride

Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

- Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09

gold

- John 12:28
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H1342, H1926, H1927, H1935, H1984, H2896, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H5278, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8231, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2570, G2744, G4888

Forms Found in the English ULB:

beautiful, beauty, glories, glorified, glorifies, glorify, glorifying, glorious, glory, take pride

gold

Related Ideas:

golden, goldsmith, purest gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.
- A "goldsmith" is a person who takes gold and makes it into useful things like jewelry.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6337, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

Forms Found in the English ULB:

gold, golden, goldsmith, goldsmiths, purest gold

good**Related Ideas:**

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
- Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
- "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
- To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

Forms Found in the English ULB:

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

grace**Related Ideas:**

generous, gracious, graciously

Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
- The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, G5485, G5543

Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of grace, generous, grace, gracious, graciously, graciously given

grape**Related Ideas:**

raisin

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times, and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- "Raisins" are dried grapes. People often dried grapes in order to keep them from rotting.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

Forms Found in the English ULB:

grape, grapes, raisin, raisins

guilt**Related Ideas:**

guilty, accountable, reason for a penalty

Definition:

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
- Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6140, H816, H817, H818, H819, H2398, H5352, H5355, H5771, H7561, H7563, G338, G1777, G5267

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cause ... to become guilty, find guilty, guilt, guilty, held accountable, reason for ... penalty

hand**Related Ideas:**

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

- To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
- The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:
- To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
- To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
- The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

Forms Found in the English ULB:

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

hang**Definition:**

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and suspending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
- Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 03:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

Forms Found in the English ULB:

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

hard**Related Ideas:**

hardly, hardness, hardship

Definition:

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- An object that is "hard" is solid and firm. It is not easily broken, bent, dented, or pierced.

- Work that is "hard" is difficult to do.
- When a person works "hard", he does that work diligently and with a lot of effort to do it well.
- A person who "hardly" does something either does not do it completely or does it rarely.
- A person who goes through "hardship" is suffering or does not have what he needs.

The term "hard" can be used figuratively * A person who has a "hard heart" is stubborn. He continues to disobey God and will not repent. * A person whose heart is hardened has become stubbornly disobedient.

Translation Suggestions

- The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
- The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
- "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
- Other ways to translate "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
- In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
- The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
- To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
- A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), [labor pains](#), [stiff-necked](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4164, H4165, H4522, H4751, H4784, H4843, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H7185, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8513, H8631, G917, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2478, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard, harden, hardened, hardening, hardens, harder, hardest, hardly, hardness, hardship, hardships

harvest

Related Ideas:

harvester

Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.

- In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: [firstfruit](#), [festival](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H7105, H7114, G270, G1081, G2326, G4863

Forms Found in the English ULB:

harvest, harvested, harvester, harvesters, harvesting, harvests

heal

Related Ideas:

cure, healer, health, healthy, make fresh, make well, recover, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.
- A person who is "healthy" has no disease. It may be that he has been healed or that he has simply not been ill for a long time.
- Health can be a metaphor for anything that is good or trustworthy. "Healthy teaching" is teaching that people can depend on to be true and helpful and morally good.

(See also: [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2492, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cure, cured, heal, healed, healer, healers, healing, healings, heals, health, healthy, made ... fresh, made ... well, make ... fresh, recovered, unhealthy

heart**Related Ideas:**

kidneys

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
- The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17

- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

Forms Found in the English ULB:

heart, hearts, kidneys

heaven

Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18

- Matthew 05:46-48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Forms Found in the English ULB:

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

heir

Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:07
- Genesis 15:01
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:07
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

Forms Found in the English ULB:

heir, heirs

hell

Related Ideas:

delivered to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them will be punished forever in hell.

- "Tartarus" is a name for hell borrowed from Greek religion to refer to the place where evil spirits are punished.

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), [death](#), [Hades](#), [abyss](#))

Bible References:

- James 03:06
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 09:42-44
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 05:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: G86, G1067, G3041, G4442, G5020, G5394

Forms Found in the English ULB:

delivered ... to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

honor

Related Ideas:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honorable, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.
- To "esteem" someone is to consider him worthy of great honor.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](#), [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5082, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1741, G1784, G2151, G2233, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

Forms Found in the English ULB:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honor, honorable, honored, honoring, honors, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

horse**Related Ideas:**

horseback, warhorse

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

Forms Found in the English ULB:

horse, horseback, horses, horses', strong horses, warhorse, warhorses

humble

Related Ideas:

humbly, humility, lowliness of mind

Definition:

The term "humble" describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
- The phrase "be humble" could be translated as "don't be prideful."
- "Humble yourself before God" could be translated as "Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness."

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

Forms Found in the English ULB:

humble, humbled, humbles, humbling, humbly, humility, lowliness of mind

jealous

Related Ideas:

jealousy

Definition:

The terms "jealous" and "jealousy" refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God's strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also "jealous" for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word "envious."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "jealous" could include "strong protective desire" or "possessive desire."
- The term "jealousy" could be translated as "strong protective feeling" or "possessive feeling."
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people's wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms "envious" and "envy" could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 05:09
- Exodus 20:05
- Ezekiel 36:05
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 01:2-3
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G2206, G3863

Forms Found in the English ULB:

jealous, jealousy

joy**Related Ideas:**

enjoy, enjoyment, glad, gladness, greet, joyful, joyfulness, jubilant, merry-hearted, rejoice, source of gladness

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.
- To "salute" is to greet a high-ranking government or military official.
- "Jubilant" is another word for "joyful."

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."

judge

- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy."

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1523, H1524, H1525, H2287, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2896, H2898, H3190, H4885, H5727, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H7965, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G782, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

Forms Found in the English ULB:

be glad, be merry, enjoy, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, enjoys, glad, gladness, greet, greeted, greeting, greetings, greets, joy, joyful, joyful shouting, joyfully, joyfulness, jubilant, make ... glad, makes ... glad, merry-hearted, rejoice, rejoiced, rejoiced greatly, rejoices, rejoices greatly, rejoicing, shout for joy, shout joyfully, shout of joy, shouts of joy, source of gladness, was merry

judge

Related Ideas:

act of judging, consider, decide, decision, give justice, give judgment, judgment, judgment seat

Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- "Judgment" can refer to the ability to make decisions. A person with "sound judgment" is wise, able to make good decisions, while a person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

- The "judgment seat" is a place where a judge sits while he listens to testimonies and gives his decision.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "opinion" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
- In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [justice](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H2664, H2713, H2742, H2803, H2940, H3198, H4406, H4941, H6414, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H7081, H7378, H7379, H7663, H7760, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G968, G1097, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1380, G1492, G2233, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4997, G5272

Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of judgment, consider, considered, considering, decide, decided, decided on, decision, give justice, giving judgment, have decided, insightful decisions, judge, judged, judges, judging, judgment, judgment seat, judgments, renders judgment, will judge

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [judge](#), [law of Moses](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:08
- Acts 07:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 05:25

- Ruth 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

Forms Found in the English ULB:

judge, judges, the judge, the judges, their judges, you judges

kin

Related Ideas:

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

- "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
- This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

Bible References:

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:20
- Ruth 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

kind

Definition:

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Picture showing Kinds:

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kind, kinds

king

Related Ideas:

kingly, kingship

Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
- Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

Forms Found in the English ULB:

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

kingdom**Related Ideas:**

power to rule

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom, kingdoms, power to rule, kingship

know

Related Ideas:

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
- If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
- To "train for" an activity is to learn now to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

Forms Found in the English ULB:

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

labor

Related Ideas:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, laborer, occupation, strive, struggle, toil

Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing physical work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."
- "Toil" is hard, unpleasant work, and to "toil" is to do hard, unpleasant work.
- An "occupation" is the work or labor that a person does to obtain food, clothing, shelter, and the other things he needs to live.
- Sometimes "strive" and "struggle" mean to work very hard to do something.

(See also: [hard](#), [labor pains](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H8104, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G2872, G2873, G3449, G4866, G4904

Forms Found in the English ULB:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, labor, labored, laborer, laborer's, laborers, laboring, labors, occupation, product of ... labor, products of ... labor, strive, strives, striving together, struggle, toil, toiled, toiling, toils

last day

Related Ideas:

last times, latter days

Definition:

The term "last days" or "latter days" refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The "last days" are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "last days" can also be translated as "final days" or "end times."
- In some contexts, this could be translated as "end of the world" or "when this world ends."

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [judge](#), [turn](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 01:02
- Isaiah 02:02
- James 05:03
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 04:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

Forms Found in the English ULB:

last day, last days, last times, latter days

law

Related Ideas:

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
- A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
- Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
- A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

Forms Found in the English ULB:

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

life

Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
- To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
- A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
- The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
- Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
- The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18

- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

light

Related Ideas:

bright, brightness, enlighten, shine

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth.

- Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
- Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, G681, G796, G1391, G1645, G2985, G2986, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bright, brightness, enlighten, enlightened, light, lighting, lights, shining

like

Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
- The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
- To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
- The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
- The word "unlike" means "not like."

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
- The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
- The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
- The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

love**Related Ideas:**

brotherly love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
8. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

Forms Found in the English ULB:

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

lowly

Related Ideas:

bring down, low condition, low position, lowliest, lowliness

Definition:

The terms "lowly" and "lowliness" refer to being poor or having low status. Being lowly can also have the meaning of being humble.

- Jesus humbled himself to the lowly position of becoming a human being and serving others.
- Having a lowly attitude is the opposite of being proud.
- Ways to translate "lowly" could include "humble" or "of low status" or "unimportant."
- The word "lowliness" could also be translated as "humility" or "little importance."

(See also: [humble](#), [proud](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 20:19
- Ezekiel 17:14
- Luke 01:48-49
- Romans 12:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6041, H6819, H7034, H8213, H8216, H8217, G5011, G5012, G5014

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring ... down, bring ... low, brings ... down, brings ... low, brought low, low condition, low position, low positions, lowliest, lowliness, lowly, of low condition

member

Definition:

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](#), [Pharisee](#), [council](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:02
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

Forms Found in the English ULB:

member, members

mercy

Related Ideas:

kindness, merciful, spare

Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- To "be merciful" or "spare" someone who has done wrong to another means to forgive that person.
- An evil person who "spares" those who have done nothing wrong does not do the same wrong to them that he has done to others.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
- The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."

- To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H2551, H2603, H2604, H2617, H3722, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, H8467, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G4698, G5363, G5544

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kindness, mercies, merciful, mercy, spare, spared, spares, tender mercy

messenger

Related Ideas:

courier, herald

Definitions:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.
- A "herald" or a "courier" is a messenger who carries messages from rulers to their subjects.

(See also: [angel](#), [apostle](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H6735, H6737, G32, G652

Forms Found in the English ULB:

couriers, herald, messenger, messengers

mind

Related Ideas:

expect, intention, likeminded, mindful, sober, think

Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To "have the mind of Christ" means to think and act as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.
- To "expect" something is to think that it will happen.
- To "think" can mean to use one's mind to form ideas.
- To "think" can also mean to have a belief or opinion about something.
- To "intend" or "have an intention" to do something is to decide or to plan to do that thing. That thing may be good or evil, and the person may or may not want to do it, but he plans to do it.
- A person who is "sober" is able to think clearly, especially in contrast to a person who has harmed his mind by drinking too much wine.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
- The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
- The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
- The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
- The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H1079, G1380, H1843, H3629, H3820, H3824, H3825, H4093, H4150, H5162, H6419, H6725, H6734, H7217, H7725, G364, G1271, G1374, G1839, G2233, G2657, G3328, G3525, G3539, G3540, G3563, G4102, G4993, G5280, G5426, G5427, G5590

Forms Found in the English ULB:

expect, expected, intention, likeminded, mind, minded, mindful, minds, sober, think, think carefully about, thinks, thought, thoughts

month**Related Ideas:**

monthly

Definition:

The term "month" refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The "new moon," or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

Forms Found in the English ULB:

month, monthly, months

mourn**Related Ideas:**

funeral song, grief, grieve, howl, mourner, mournful, sorrow, sorrowful, tears, wail, weep, with tears

Definitions:

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.
- A "howl" is the crying sound an animal makes. People who "howl" are hurt, sad, or angry.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H421, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H2470, H3510, H3013, H3213, H3708, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6087, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23, G2354, G2355, G2799, G2805, G2875, G3076, G3077, G3602, G3996, G3997

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bitter, cause ... grief, funeral song, grief, grieve, grieved, grieving, howl, howls, mourn, mourned, mourner, mourners, mourners', mournful, mournfully, mourning, mourns, sorrow, sorrowful, sorrows, tears, wail, wailing, wailings, wails, weep, weeping, weeps bitterly, wept, with tears

name**Related Ideas:**

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
- People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
- A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12

- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

Forms Found in the English ULB:

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

neighbor

Related Ideas:

neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."
- A "neighborhood" is a community of people in a town or city who live near each other.
- "Neighboring" countries and regions are countries and regions that are nearby.

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

Forms Found in the English ULB:

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring, neighbors

oath

Related Ideas:

swear, swear by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. A person who swears an oath commits himself to being faithful and truthful, and by doing so he is saying that God has the right to punish him if he breaks the oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelek](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G331, G332, G3660, G3726, G3727, G3728, G3784

Forms Found in the English ULB:

oath, oath-taking, oaths, swear, swear by, swearing, swears, swears by, swore, swore an oath, sworn

obey**Related Ideas:**

follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen, obedience, obedient

Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, the people obey by not doing that.
- To "observe" a law or command is to obey it.
- Other words used to refer to obeying someone or something are: follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "obey" could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [disobey](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2388, H3349, H4928, H5341, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G2722, G2902, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5426, G5442

Forms Found in the English ULB:

following, give ... ear, hear, heard, hold ... securely, hold to, keep, keeps, kept, listen, listened, listened to, obedience, obedient, obediently, obey, obeyed, obeying, obeys

oil**Related Ideas:**

ointment

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.

- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

Forms Found in the English ULB:

oil, oils, ointment, ointments

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

Forms Found in the English ULB:

olive, olives

oppress

Related Ideas:

oppression, oppressive, oppressor, ruthless

Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

- The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.
- The term "ruthless" describes who show no pity or compassion to others. Oppressors are ruthless.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
- Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
- The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
- The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H2556, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, H8496, G2561, G2616, G2669

Forms Found in the English ULB:

oppress, oppressed, oppresses, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors, ruthless

partial

Related Ideas:

partiality

Definition:

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are richer or more popular than other people.
- God instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to treat rich people better than poor people.

(See also: [favor](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5234, H5375, H6440, G991, G2983, G4299, G4381, G4382, G4383

Forms Found in the English ULB:

be partial, partial, partiality, show partiality

patient

Related Ideas:

impatient, patience

Definition:

The terms "patient" and "patience" refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God's people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.
- The term "impatient" means not patient.

(See also: [endure](#), [forgive](#), [persevere](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H750, H753, H2342, H3803, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

Forms Found in the English ULB:

impatient, patience, patient, patiently

peace

Related Ideas:

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.
- A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
- To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

perfect**Related Ideas:**

perfecter, perfection, perfectly

Definition:

The term "perfect" describes something that has no flaw. To "perfect" something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Only God and what he does is absolutely perfect.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they become perfect and mature because they become more like Christ in their character.
- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient; it does not mean that he is sinless.
- The term "perfect" also has the meaning of being "complete" or "whole."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "perfect" could be translated as "without flaw" or "without error" or "flawless" or "without fault" or "not having any faults."
- The term "perfectly" could be translated "completely" or "fully."

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3615, H3632, H3634, H4359, H4390, H8003, H8503, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G2005, G2038, G2675, G2676, G3647, G4135, G4137, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050, G5055

Forms Found in the English ULB:

perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly

perish**Related Ideas:**

imperishable, perishable

Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster.

- The word "perish" can also be a metaphor for being punished in hell either presently or in the future.
- Something that is "imperishable" will never perish.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "die" or "be destroyed" or "be punished in hell" or "will be punished in hell."
- When perish is a metaphor, make sure that the translation of "perish" does not only mean "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H1197, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H7921, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G5356

Forms Found in the English ULB:

imperishable, perish, perishable, perished, perishes, perishing

possess

Related Ideas:

belongings, dispossess, possession, property

Definitions:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, "possess" is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.
- The term "dispossess" meant "take someone's property."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
- "Possessions" are also called "belongings" and "property."
- The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
- The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
- The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
- The phrase "dispossess them" can be translated as "take their land" or "make them leave their land."

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H272, H2505, H2631, H3018, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H5157, H5159, H5459, G979, G1139, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, H3520, G4041, G4047, G4632, G5224, G5225

Forms Found in the English ULB:

belongings, dispossess, possess, possessed, possesses, possessing, possession, possessions, property, took possession, valuable possessions

praise

Related Ideas:

praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person. Something that is praiseworthy is good and deserves to be praised.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1289, H1319, H1984, H2142, H2167, H7121, H8416, G1392, G1843, G2127, G2128, G2129, G2980, G3170, G3853, G5485, G5567

Forms Found in the English ULB:

praise, praised, praises, praiseworthy, praising, sing praise, sing praises

pray

Related Ideas:

prayer

Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H577, H1156, H2470, H3908, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7879, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

Forms Found in the English ULB:

heard ... prayer, pray, prayed, prayer, prayers, praying, prays, urgently pray

precious**Related Ideas:**

costly, expensive, valuable

Definitions:

The term "precious" describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term "precious stones" or "precious jewels" refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called "precious metals."
- Yahweh says that his people are "precious" in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God's sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- The terms "costly" and "expensive" describe something that costs a lot of money to buy.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "precious" could also be translated as "valuable" or "very dear" or "cherished" or "highly valued."

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:01
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 01:7
- Luke 07:2-5
- Psalms 036:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1431, H2530, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H7939, H8443, G927, G1784, G2472, G2570, G4185, G4186, G5092, G5093

Forms Found in the English ULB:

costly, expensive, precious, precious things, precious treasures, valuable, valuables

profit

Related Ideas:

profitable, unprofitable

Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

To "take advantage of" someone is to make extra profit from him because he is weak and unable to demand greater return.

(See also: [worthy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
- The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
- To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
- In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

Bible References:

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7939, H7965, G147, G512, G890, G1281, G2108, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G3685, G4122, G4297, G4851, G5622, G5623

Forms Found in the English ULB:

profit, profitable, profits, treated ... violently for profit, unprofitable

promise**Related Ideas:**

binding promise

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

Forms Found in the English ULB:

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

prophet

Related Ideas:

prophecy, prophesy, prophetic, seer

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached."
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law of Moses](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5046, H5197, H7200, H7203, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

Forms Found in the English ULB:

give ... prophecies, prophecies, prophecy, prophesied, prophesies, prophesy, prophesying, prophet, prophet's, prophetess, prophetic, prophets, seer, seer's, seers, seers'

prostitute

Related Ideas:

prostitution

Definition:

The terms "prostitute" and "harlot" both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word "prostitute" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression "play the harlot" means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To "prostitute oneself" to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this.

(See also: [adultery](#), [god](#), [sexual immorality](#), [god](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

Forms Found in the English ULB:

act like a prostitute, acted like a prostitute, acted like prostitutes, prostitute, prostitute's, prostituted, prostitutes, prostitution

proud

Related Ideas:

pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms "proud" and "prideful" refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms "proud" and "pride" can also be used in a positive sense, such as being "proud of" what someone else has achieved and being "proud of" your children. The expression "take pride in your work" means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of "pride."
- The term "prideful" is always negative, with the meaning of being "arrogant" or "conceited" or "self-important."

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun "pride" could be translated as "arrogance" or "conceit" or "self-importance."
- In other contexts, "pride" could be translated as "joy" or "satisfaction" or "pleasure."
- To be "proud of" could also be translated as "happy with" or "satisfied with" or "joyful about (the accomplishments of)."
- The phrase "take pride in your work" could be translated as, "find satisfaction in doing your work well."
- The expression "take pride in Yahweh" could also be translated as "be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done" or "be happy about how amazing Yahweh is."

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

Forms Found in the English ULB:

pride, prideful, proud, proudly, source of pride

pure

Related Ideas:

impure, purge, purification, purify, purity, refine

Definition:

To be "pure" means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, "purify" and "purification" refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.
- Something that is "impure" is not pure.
- To "refine" is to purify metal. This is done by heating the metal over a fire until it melts and removing what should not be there.
- Someone who has pure motives is someone who only wants to do what is good.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "purify" could be translated as "make pure" or "cleanse" or "cleanse from all contamination" or "get rid of all sin."
- A phrase such as "when the time for their purification was over" could be translated as "when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days."
- The phrase "provided purification for sins" could be translated as "provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin."

- Other ways to translate "purification" could include "cleansing" or "spiritual washing" or "becoming ritually clean."
- Other ways to translate "pure motives" or "purity of motives" is "sincere" or "sincerity."

(See also: [atonement](#), [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H571, H1249, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H2896, H3800, H5079, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, G48, G49, G53, G54, G169, G185, G505, G1103, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513

Forms Found in the English ULB:

impure, impure thing, impurities, impurity, pure, purer, purge, purification, purified, purifies, purify, purity, refine, refined, refiner, refiner's, refining

raise

Related Ideas:

arise, rise, risen

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

rise, arise

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"
- A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."

- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

Forms Found in the English ULB:

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

rebuke

Related Ideas:

correct, correction

Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26

- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H3256, H4045, H4148, H7626, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

Forms Found in the English ULB:

correct, corrected, correction, corrections, corrects, give correction, rebuke, rebuked, rebukes

receive

Related Ideas:

abstain, receiver

Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
- The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

Forms Found in the English ULB:

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

reed**Definitions:**

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 07:24
- Matthew 11:07
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 068:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, G4464, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

Forms Found in the English ULB:

reed, reeds

rest**Related Ideas:**

at ease, pause, refresh, relief, restless

Definition:

The term "rest" literally means to stop working. Usually it means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. A "rest" is what someone has when he stops working. To "rest secure" is to feel safe. To "rest" an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there. An object that is "resting" somewhere is simply in that place. A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something.

- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
- To be "at ease" is to feel safe or comfortable.
- To "pause" is to stop doing something for a while.
- To "refresh" someone is to give him rest and whatever else he needs so he can get his strength back.
- "Relief" is the rest a person has when a problem becomes less severe or ends.
- If someone is "restless," he feels anxious or bored and cannot rest.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as "I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace."

- God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the peace that comes from trusting in me."
- The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the others" or "everything that is left."

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3427, H3498, H3499, H3885, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5162, H5183, H5315, H5564, H6314, H6960, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7663, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7951, H7961, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2838, G4520

Forms Found in the English ULB:

at ease, be at rest, give ... rest, pause, refresh, refreshed, relief, rest, rest secure, rested, rested secure, resting, resting place, resting places, restless, rests

righteous

Related Ideas:

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
- "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good"
- Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), [integrity](#), [justice](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [sin](#), [lawful](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

rod**Related Ideas:**

measuring rod

Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:23
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Revelation 11:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

Forms Found in the English ULB:

measuring rod, rod, rods

royal**Related Ideas:**

kings', royalty

Definition:

The term "royal" describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called "royal" include a king's clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called "royal robes." Often a king's robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a "royal priesthood." Other ways to translate this could include "priests who serve God the King" or "called to be priests for God the King."

- The term "royal" could also be translated as "kingly" or "belonging to a king."

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:13
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Amos 07:13
- Genesis 49:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H643, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, G933, G934, G937

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kings', royal, royal official, royalty

save

Related Ideas:

make well, preserve, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."
- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."
- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."
- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), [Savior](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4581, H4931, H5337, H5338, H5756, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G1295, G1508, G1515, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

Forms Found in the English ULB:

be made well, brought safely, brought safely through, place of safety, preserve, safe, safely, safety, salvation, save, saved, saves, saving

servant

Related Ideas:

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

Definition:

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [covenant](#), [law](#))

Bible References

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

Forms Found in the English ULB:

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

shadow

Related Ideas:

overshadow, shade

Definition:

The word "shadow" literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. The shadow has a shape similar to the shape of the object that blocks the light.

- The word "overshadow" means to block the light from above and cause a shadow to appear on something.
- The word "shade" means a dark area where the sunlight is blocked, perhaps by a cloud or a trees.

The word "shadow" also has several figurative meanings.

- The "shadow of death" means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes "shadow" is used as another word for "darkness."
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate "shadow" in these contexts could include "shade" or "safety" or "protection."
- It is best to translate "shadow" literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:09
- Genesis 19:08
- Isaiah 30:02
- Jeremiah 06:04
- Psalms 017:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

Forms Found in the English ULB:

overshadow, overshadowed, shade, shadow, shadows

silver**Related Ideas:**

money

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

Forms Found in the English ULB:

money, silver

sin**Related Ideas:**

sinful, sinner

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebellious against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
- Romans 08:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

sister

Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or wife.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother in Christ](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 01:02
- Romans 16:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H269, G27, G79

Forms Found in the English ULB:

sister, sister's, sisters, sisters'

slaughter**Definition:**

The term "slaughter" refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called "slaughter."

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- "Weapons of slaughter" could be translated as "weapons for killing."
- The expression "the slaughter was very great" could be translated as "a large number were killed" or "the number of deaths was very great" or "a terribly high number of people died."
- Other ways to translate "slaughter" could include "kill" or "slay" or "killing."

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slain](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

Forms Found in the English ULB:

slaughter, slaughtered, slaughtering, slaughters

son**Definition:**

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.

- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [father](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

Forms Found in the English ULB:

son, son's, sons

soul

Related Ideas:

person

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person. It is the part of a person that continues living after the body dies.

- The terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5315, G5590

Forms Found in the English ULB:

person, persons, soul, souls

sow**Related Ideas:**

plant, plantation, transplanted

Definition:

A "plant" is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To "plant" something is to put it in the ground so that it can grow. To "sow" is to scatter seeds on the ground so they can go into the ground and grow. A "sower" is a person who sows seeds.

- Sometimes people plant seeds or plants by making holes in the soil and placing seeds or a plant in each hole.
- When someone plants seeds by sowing, he takes handfuls of seeds and scatters them on the ground.
- The term "sow" can be used figuratively, as in "a person will reap what he sows." This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.
- A "plantation" is a large field where people plant crops.
- To "transplant" something is to move it from one place and plant it in another place.

Translations Suggestions

- The term "sow" could be translated as "plant" if that word can include planting seeds by scattering them.
- The term "sower" could be translated as "planter" or "farmer" or "person who scatters seeds."

- The expression "a person reaps what he sows" could be translated as "just as a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, a person's good actions bring good results and a person's evil actions bring evil results."

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [reap](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:08
- Luke 08:05
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:04
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H3759, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

Forms Found in the English ULB:

place ... planted, plant, plantation, planted, planting, plants, replanted, sow, sowed, sowing, sown, sows, transplanted

spirit

Related Ideas:

ghost, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."

- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#), [divination](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

stumble

Related Ideas:

reel

Definition:

The term "stumble" means "almost fall" when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to "stumble" can mean to "sin" or to "falter" in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.
- "Stumble" can also be used figuratively to mean "sin" or "stop believing.""
- The word "reel" means to lose one's balance and have trouble walking.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term "stumble" means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means "almost fall" or "trip over."
- When stumble is used figuratively it could also be translated as "become weak" or "stumble by sinning" or "stumble by not believing."
- The phrase "made to stumble" could be translated as "caused to become weak" or "caused to falter."

(See also: [believe](#), [persecute](#), [sin](#), [stumbling block](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:08
- Hosea 04:05
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

Forms Found in the English ULB:

causes ... to stumble, reeling, stumble, stumbled, stumbles, stumbling

submit**Related Ideas:**

submission

Definition:

To "submit" usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to "submit to one another" means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To "live in submission to" means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The command "submit to" could be translated as "put yourself under the authority of" or "follow the leadership of" or "humbly honor and respect"
- The term "submission" could be translated as "obedience" or "the following of authority."
- The phrase "live in submission to" could be translated as "be obedient to" or "put oneself under the authority of."
- The phrase "be in submission" could be translated as "humbly accept authority."

(See also: [subject](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 03:01
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3584, G5226, G5292, G5293

Forms Found in the English ULB:

in submission, submission, submit, submits, submitted, submitting

suffer**Related Ideas:**

misery

Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.

- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- 'Misery' is what a person feels when they suffer.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
- Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
- The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
- To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, G4912, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6001, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7489, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

Forms Found in the English ULB:

miseries, suffer, suffered, suffering, sufferings, suffers

teach

Related Ideas:

educated, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

- A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
- Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
- A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
- A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
- A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

Forms Found in the English ULB:

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3384, H3887, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

Forms Found in the English ULB:

teacher, teachers

tempt**Related Ideas:**

temptation, tempter

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#), [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4531, H5254, G551, G3985, G3986, G3987

Forms Found in the English ULB:

tempt, temptation, tempted, tempter, tempting

test**Related Ideas:**

put to the test

Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.

- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

Forms Found in the English ULB:

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

the sea

Facts:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#), [prosper](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

Forms Found in the English ULB:

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

the twelve**Related Ideas:**

the eleven

Definition:

The term "the twelve" refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called "the eleven."

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title "the twelve" distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, "the eleven" chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas' place. Then they were called "the twelve" again.

Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, "the twelve apostles" or "Jesus' twelve closest disciples."
- "The eleven" could also be translated as "Jesus' eleven remaining disciples."
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in "the Twelve" and "the Eleven."

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 06:02
- Luke 09:01
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1427, G1733

Forms Found in the English ULB:

the eleven, the twelve

tongue**Related Ideas:**

language

Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of "tongue" in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- The expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire.
- In the expression "my tongue rejoices," the term "tongue" refers to the whole person.
- The phrase "lying tongue" refers to a person's voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated by "language" or "spiritual language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [joy](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084, G5456

Forms Found in the English ULB:

language, languages, tongue, tongues

transgress**Related Ideas:**

offend, offense, transgression, transgressor

Definition:

The term "transgression" refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To "transgress" is to commit a "transgression."

- Figuratively, to "transgress" can also be described as to "cross a line," that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms "transgression," "sin," "iniquity," and "trespass" all include the meaning of acting against God's will and disobeying his commands.
- To "offend" someone is to anger him by transgressing against him. He will then be "offended."

Translation Suggestions:

- To "transgress" could be translated as to "sin" or to "disobey" or to "rebel."

- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean "sin" or "transgress" or "trespass," it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See also: [sin](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:06
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H6087, H6586, H6588, G3847, G3848, G3892

Forms Found in the English ULB:

offend, offended, offense, offenses, transgress, transgressed, transgresses, transgressing, transgression, transgressions, transgressor, transgressors

tremble

Related Ideas:

shake

Definition:

To "tremble" means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

- This term is also used figuratively to mean "be very afraid."
- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5425, H5568, H6206, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, G1790, G4579, G5141, G5156, G5425

Forms Found in the English ULB:

shake, shakes, shook, tremble, trembled, trembles, trembling

tribe

Related Ideas:

tribal

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H4940, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribal, tribe, tribes

trouble

Related Ideas:

troublesome

Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. Something that is "troubling" causes people to feel distressed. Someone who is troublesome causes problems. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or anxious or distressed about something.

A "tumult" is a group of people making much noise because they are troubled or unhappy.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."

- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or "when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1672, H2196, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6087, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G318, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G2906, G3636, G3926, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

Forms Found in the English ULB:

trouble, troubled, troubles, troublesome, troubling

turn

Related Ideas:

apostasy, apostate

Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
- To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
- To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
- "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
- An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
- The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."

- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [god](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

understand

Related Ideas:

argument, craftiness, insight, intelligent, realize, unintentionally, without understanding

Definition:

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- A person who is "without understanding" does not understand.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
- Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."
- "Arguments" are statements that one person makes to share his understanding with another person and to convince that other person to understand something the same way.
- "Craftiness" is understanding used for evil.
- An "intelligent" person thinks clearly and learns quickly.
- To do something "unintentionally" is to do it without knowing or by accident or without intending to do it.

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3823, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G144, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1380, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2638, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4894, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

Forms Found in the English ULB:

arguments, craftiness, gain understanding, gives ... insight, insight, intelligent, realize, realized, understand, understanding, understands, understood, unintentionally, without understanding

vain

Related Ideas:

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, vanity

Definition:

The term "vain" describes things that are useless or have no purpose. Vain things are worthless.

- The term "vanity" refers to worthlessness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done "in vain," it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything. It was futile.
- To "believe in vain" means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty" or "useless" or "futile" or "worthless" or "meaningless" or "of no value."
- The phrase "in vain" could be translated as "without result" or "with no result" or "for no reason" or "with no purpose."
- The term "vanity" could be translated as "pride" or "nothing worthwhile" or "hopelessness."

(See also: [god](#), [worthy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 02:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G255, G512, G692, G889, G945, G1500, G2756, G2757, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

Forms Found in the English ULB:

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, uselessly, vain, vain plans, vanity, without meaning

vine**Related Ideas:**

grapevine

Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem."

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009

Forms Found in the English ULB:

grapevine, vine, vines

water**Definition:**

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water.
- The term "waters" can also be a general reference to a large amount of water.
- To "water" livestock and other animals means to provide water for them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The phrase "draw water" means "pull water up from a well with a bucket."

Translation Suggestions:

- "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H3384, H4325, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

Forms Found in the English ULB:

water, watered, watering, waters

well

Related Ideas:

cistern

Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."

- The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [prison](#), [strife](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

wise

Related Ideas:

wisdom, wisely, wiser, wisest

Definition:

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.
- "Sound wisdom" is wisdom that enables people who have it to succeed in doing good.
- In the Bible, the phrase "worldly wisdom" refers to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
- "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
- It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H1847, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3925, H6195, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429

Forms Found in the English ULB:

sound wisdom, wisdom, wise, wisely, wiser, wisest

word**Definition:**

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

- An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
- Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
- Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:02
- Acts 08:04
- Colossians 04:03
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 27:04
- John 01:03
- John 01:14
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 02:08
- Matthew 07:27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

Forms Found in the English ULB:

word, words, message, messages

work**Related Ideas:**

act, deed, fellow worker

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
- The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
- When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
- The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
- The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
- The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

Forms Found in the English ULB:

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

world**Related Ideas:**

universe, worldly

Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
- In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), [Rome](#), [godly](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H2717, H5769, H8398, G165, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

Forms Found in the English ULB:

universe, world, world's, worldly

wrong**Related Ideas:**

defraud, hurt, mistreat, wrongdoer, wrongdoing

Definition:

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- Wrongdoing is the act of doing what is wrong. It can also refer to a behavior that is wrong.
- The term "defraud" means to illegally take money from someone by lying to them. Another word for this is "cheat."

- The terms "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
- The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or, "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4347, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H5932, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, H8604, G91, G92, G93, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G4550, G5195, G5196

Forms Found in the English ULB:

defraud, hurt, hurting, hurts, mistreat, mistreated, wrong, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, wronged, wrongfully, wronging, wrongs

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: [month](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7620, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

year

Forms Found in the English ULB:

year, years
